

SoftBank 942P

User Guide



SoftBank

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 942P.

- For proper handset use, read User Guide (this guide).
- Accessible services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 942P is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Note

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.
- Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎ P.19-33) about unclear or missing information.

Content Search


Function/Service Name Search	Index	☞ P.19-26
	Contents	☞ P.vi
Objective Search	Objective Search	☞ P.ii
	Index	☞ P.19-26
Function Search	Overview	☞ P.iv
	Contents	☞ P.vi
Using Your Handset	Function List	☞ P.19-2
	Display	☞ P.1-10
Guide Organization	Contents	☞ P.vi
	Section Contents	☞ Chapter Top Pages
Solving Problems	Troubleshooting	☞ P.19-10
	Warranty & Service	☞ P.19-32

Getting Started	1
Call	2
Text Entry/Handwriting	3
Phone Book	4
Digital TV	5
Camera	6
Mobile Widget	7
News/Entertainment	8
Music Player	9
Managing Files	10
Connectivity	11
Handset Security	12
Tools	13
Messaging	14
Internet	15
S! Appli	16
S! GPS Navi	17
Settings	18
Appendix	19

Confirming & Using My Number & My Mail Address

My Phone Number

Confirm your phone number on handset in Standby without navigating menus.

My Number:  P.1-30

My Mail Address

Customized address may reduce spam.

Customizing Handset Address:
 P.14-4

Customizing Handset Settings

Setting Ringtones

Set Chaku-Uta Full® files as ringtones.

Ringtones:  P.18-2

Downloading Tunes & Tones

Download music (Chaku-Uta Full®) files from mobile websites.

Downloading Music:  P.9-3

Mastering Basics



Learning Your Handset

Learn key assignments, and navigate menus to select & execute functions.

Handset Menus:  P.1-18
Parts & Functions:  P.1-6

Making Mobile Calls

Use voice telephony or enjoy video telephony with compatible mobiles.

Voice Calls:  P.2-2
Video Calls:  P.2-6

Fun Stuff

Watching One Seg Digital TV

Enjoy One Seg digital TV. Set channels in advance to view/record shows.

Digital TV:  P.5-1



Music Player

Download music files from websites via Music Player directly.

Music Player:  P.9-1



Sending Your Contact Info

Save mail address and other details; send to compatible devices wirelessly.

Account Details: P.4-12

Messaging Multiple Recipients

Enter multiple mail addresses/numbers to send a message to all at one time.

Sending Messages: P.14-4
Add/Edit/Delete Address: P.14-9

Sending Files Wirelessly

Send files or your own mail address saved in Account Details via Infrared/IC transmission to other compatible devices.

Infrared/IC Transmission: P.4-12

Customizing Standby Display

Add wallpaper, set clock size/position or set calendar to appear in Standby.

Wallpaper: P.10-6
Display: P.18-3

Customizing Menu

Save frequently used functions in Private Menu.

Private Menu: P.1-24

Using Shortcuts to Functions

Access shortcuts to frequently used functions in Standby.

Shortcuts: P.1-21

Mastering Text Entry Methods

Enter text for Messaging functions or to add/edit Phone Book entry items.

Text Entry: P.3-1

Using Messaging Services

Send short or long text messages. Attach image/sound files, etc. to S! Mail.

Messaging: P.14-1
Graphic Mail: P.14-6

Accessing the Mobile Internet

Access Mobile Internet sites via Yahoo! Keitai to browse sites or download files.

Yahoo! Keitai: P.15-1

Camera & Video Camera

Capture still images or record videos. Use Camera in Viewer Position.

Camera: P.6-1

Playing Games

Download and install S! Appli Games via Yahoo! Keitai.

S! Appli: P.16-1



Getting News (Japanese)

Set up S! Quick News to view a variety of information contents.

S! Quick News: P.8-5


942P Features**Waterproof**

942P is waterproof, allowing handset use in the rain or in bathrooms.

 **P.xxiii**

Viewer Position

Use Touch Pen (complimentary sample) for Touch Panel Operations in Viewer Position. Enter text using Handwriting function. Customize Touch Menu.

 **P.1-31**

SoftBank Mobile Features**Yahoo! Keitai**

Access Mobile Internet sites via Yahoo! Keitai to browse sites or download files.

 **P.15-4**


Graphic Mail/AutoArt

Create HTML messages; select font color/size, background; insert images. AutoArt adds pictograms based on entered keywords.

 **P.14-6, P.14-7**

Useful Features**Phone Book/****S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)**

Save Phone Book entries; back up handset entries on Server, etc.

 **P.4-1, P.4-10**

Camera

Capture still images with 13.2 megapixel (effective pixels) camera. Set Image stabilizer/Face detection for high-quality pictures.

 **P.6-1**

PC-related Functions**PC Site Browser &
Direct Browser (for Wi-Fi)**

View PC-based websites on handset.

 **P.15-5**

Data Back-up/Management

Transfer data between handset and PC for back-up and editing.

 **P.11-16**

Picture Album

View pictures in slideshow mode. Choose from a variety of effects.

 P.10-24

Wi-Fi

Use wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) to connect to home/public access points. Enjoy high speed Internet access or stream media files.

 P.11-11

PC Mail

Send/receive messages via PC mail account.

 P.14-25

S! GPS Navi

Check your position on map, and navigate to a destination.

 P.17-1

S! Information Channel/Weather (Japanese)

Subscribe to content and periodically receive update information. Set Weather Indicator to check weather forecast in Standby.

 P.8-2


Mobile Widget (Japanese)

Download and paste widgets to Standby for quick access to information and various tools.

 P.7-1

Calendar & Alarm

Add events by time/date and set Event Alarms to help manage your schedule.

 P.13-2, P.13-6

Music Player

Play handset/microSD Card music files.

 P.9-1

Digital TV

Enjoy One Seg digital TV programs and video in wide horizontal screen.

 P.5-1

BD/HDD Recorder

Save programs recorded on an HDD recorder to microSD and play back on handset.

 P.10-14

Bluetooth®

Connect wirelessly to a Bluetooth®-compatible speaker to enjoy TV in dynamic sound.

 P.11-6

Osaifu-Keitai®

Use handset as an electronic cash card, reward card or membership card.

 P.13-9

Contents

Contents	vi
Package Contents	viii
Using This Guide	viii
Safety Precautions	xii
Handling Precautions	xviii
Waterproof Feature	xxiii
Copyrights and Others	xxvii
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)	xxx

1. Getting Started

About Handset	1-2
USIM Card	1-4
Parts & Functions	1-6
About Battery	1-12
Handset Power On/Off	1-15
Manner Mode	1-16
Handset Menus	1-18
Standby Options	1-20
Customizing User Interface	1-22
Private Menu	1-24
Simple Menu	1-25
Using Videos/Music	1-27
Passwords	1-28
Multi Task	1-29
View Blind	1-30
My Number	1-30
Viewer Position	1-31

2. Call

Making/Answering Voice Calls	2-2
Making/Answering Video Calls	2-6
International Calls	2-9
Engaged Call Functions	2-11
Call Log	2-13
Answer Phone	2-15
Optional Services	2-17

3. Text Entry/Handwriting

Text Entry	3-2
Entering Text	3-3
Conversion Methods (Japanese)	3-6
Editing Text	3-8
User's Dictionary	3-9
Download Dictionary	3-10
Text Entry in Touch Panel	3-10
Handwriting Functions	3-11

4. Phone Book

Overview	4-2
Saving to Phone Book	4-3
Searching/Using Phone Book	4-6
Managing Phone Book	4-9
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)	4-10
Account Details	4-12
Voice Dial	4-13

5. Digital TV

Basics	5-2
Initial Setup	5-4
Watching TV	5-5
TV Links (Japanese)	5-10
Recording/Playing Programs	5-11

6. Camera

Before Using Camera	6-2
Pictures	6-7
Videos	6-8
Other Camera Functions	6-9
Viewing Saved Images	6-16

7. Mobile Widget

Mobile Widget (Japanese)	7-2
Using Widgets	7-2

8. News/Entertainment

S! Information Channel/Weather (Japanese)	8-2
S! Quick News (Japanese)	8-5
S! Contents Store	8-6
Blogging	8-7

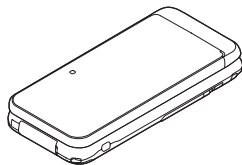
9. Music Player

Overview	9-2
Saving Music	9-2
Using Music Player	9-5

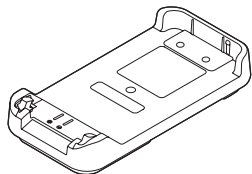
10. Managing Files		
Data Folder.....	10-2	
Opening Files.....	10-4	
Using/Editing Still Images.....	10-11	
Playing Videos.....	10-13	
Managing Folders/Files.....	10-16	
microSD Card.....	10-18	
Picture Album.....	10-24	
11. Connectivity		
Infrared.....	11-2	
IC Transmission.....	11-4	
Bluetooth®.....	11-6	
Wi-Fi.....	11-11	
SoftBank Utility Software (Japanese).....	11-16	
USB (Japanese).....	11-17	
AV Output.....	11-18	
12. Handset Security		
Changing Phone Password.....	12-2	
Security Functions.....	12-2	
Restricting Calls/Messages.....	12-9	
Reset.....	12-13	
13. Tools		
Calendar.....	13-2	
Tasks.....	13-5	
Alarms.....	13-6	
Calculator.....	13-8	
Notepad.....	13-8	
Osaifu Keitai®.....	13-9	
Dictionary (Japanese).....	13-13	
Sound Recorders.....	13-14	
Bar Code Reader.....	13-15	
Pedometer.....	13-17	
14. Messaging		
Basics.....	14-2	
Sending S! Mail & SMS.....	14-4	
Receiving & Viewing Messages.....	14-12	
Organizing/Using Messages.....	14-17	
PC Mail.....	14-25	
15. Internet		
Getting Started.....	15-2	
Using Yahoo! Keitai.....	15-4	
Browsing PC Sites.....	15-5	
Basic Operations.....	15-7	
Using Information.....	15-9	
Option Menu Items.....	15-14	
16. S! Appli		
Before Using S! Appli.....	16-2	
Using S! Appli.....	16-3	
17. S! GPS Navi		
About S! GPS Navi.....	17-2	
Using S! GPS Navi.....	17-2	
18. Settings		
Sound & Vibration.....	18-2	
Display.....	18-3	
Manner Mode.....	18-7	
Incoming Settings.....	18-8	
Date & Time.....	18-9	
Call Settings.....	18-9	
Notification Light.....	18-10	
Text Entry.....	18-11	
Phone Book.....	18-12	
Voice Dial.....	18-12	
Video Call.....	18-12	
Digital TV.....	18-13	
Camera.....	18-15	
Mobile Widget (Japanese).....	18-18	
S! Quick News (Japanese).....	18-18	
Bluetooth®.....	18-19	
Messaging.....	18-20	
Internet.....	18-23	
S! Appli.....	18-25	
Osaifu-Keitai®.....	18-25	
S! GPS Navi Settings.....	18-26	
Default Settings.....	18-27	
Confirming Settings.....	18-28	
19. Appendix		
Function List.....	19-2	
Troubleshooting.....	19-10	
Software Update.....	19-12	
Quick Open Menu.....	19-14	
Key Assignments (5-touch Mode).....	19-15	
(2-touch Mode).....	19-16	
Symbol List.....	19-17	
Character Code List.....	19-18	
Weather Indicator List.....	19-23	
Memory List.....	19-24	
Specifications.....	19-25	
Index.....	19-26	
Warranty & Service.....	19-32	
Customer Service.....	19-33	

Package Contents

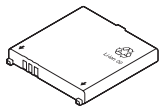
□ Handset (942P)



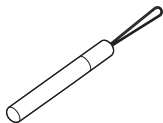
□ Desktop Holder (PMEAY1)



□ Battery (PMBAY1)



□ Touch Pen*



□ Quick Start Guide (Japanese)

□ Safety Precautions (Japanese)

* Complimentary sample (not available for purchase)

Note

- Use SoftBank specified AC Charger (sold separately) to charge battery.
- For more information about AC Charger and accessories, please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎ P.19-33).
- 942P accepts microSD Card (not included). Purchase microSD Card to use related functions (☞ P.10-18).

Using This Guide

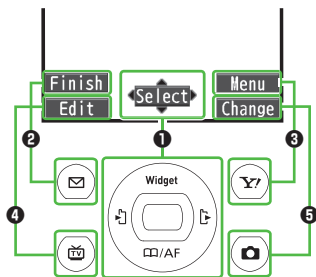
Before reading this guide, make a note of the following:

- In this guide, SoftBank 942P User Guide, SoftBank 942P is referred to as "handset" or abbreviated as "942P."
- "microSD Card" and "microSDHC Card" are referred to as "microSD Card" in this guide.
- Handset operations and screenshots are based on defaults for handset color **White** (☞ P.18-27).
- Handset operations and screenshots are based on Normal Position.
- Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- Key icons use simplified labels.
- Most operation descriptions begin in Standby.
- Pressing a key for more than one second is described as "Press and hold."

Guide Symbols

Press the corresponding key to execute the function or operation indicated at the bottom of Display.

Example:



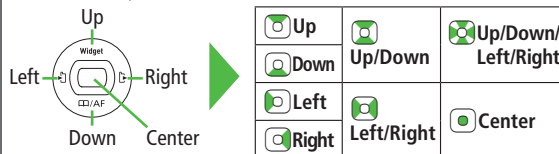
- Images shown above are for reference only.

Multi Selector Operations (1)

Operations	Softkey Label*
Press to scroll	
Press	Select

* Softkey labels vary by menu.

Use Multi Selector to select items, navigate menus, etc. In this guide, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown below.



Softkeys (2345)

In this guide, Softkey operations are indicated as shown below.

Example 23: [Finish], [Menu]

- [Finish] and [Menu] are Softkey label examples; Softkey labels vary by menu.

Japanese Functions & Services

When "(Japanese)" appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of the function or service.

Operation Descriptions

- The following examples are for reference only and may differ from actual operations.

Basic Operations

Operations are expressed as shown here.

Example 1:

A Menu Selection **B Steps**

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Group

- appears for USIM Card Group.

1 Highlight a group → [Edit] →
Select an item → Set item

A Menu Selection

- 1 Press in Standby to open Main Menu.
- 2 Use to highlight **Phone**; then press [Select].
- 3 Use to highlight **Group**; then press [Select].

B Steps

- 1 Use to highlight a group; then press [Edit].
- 2 Use to highlight an item; then press [Select].
- 3 Set respective items.

Example 2:

C Check Box Selection

- 1 → **Settings**
- 2 **Universal Settings** → **Mail Security**
- 3 Enter Phone Password → → [Finish]

C Check Box Selection

- 1 Use to highlight an item; then press . Check Box changes to . Repeat to select multiple items.
- 2 To deselect an item, use to highlight item; then press . Check mark disappears.

Advanced Operations

For advanced features and settings, go to pages indicated under **Tip**.

Example:

Tip ● Operations Available during a Voice Call (☞ P.2-11)
● Calling from Call Log (☞ P.2-14)
● Saving Entered Numbers to Phone Book (☞ P.4-5)

Settings ● Set Handset Response when Closed during Call (☞ P.18-10)

Settings Refer to Chapter 18 "Settings."

Abbreviated Descriptions

For advanced settings (Chapter 18), initial operations may be abbreviated or omitted.

Example:

A Abbreviated Steps
Initial steps are abbreviated.

From ► **Main Menu** ► Tools ► Calendar

Functions Available in Calendar Window
> Highlight a date → (☞) [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
New	Create a new entry (☞ P.13-2, P.13-3)
Weekly display/ 1 Month	Toggle Monthly/Weekly view

B Steps

Follow these steps after **Abbreviated Steps**.




Use Other Graphic Mail Settings
> In S! Mail text entry window, (☞) → Select an arrange item

C Omitted Steps







Initial steps are omitted. Start operations from specified window.

Safety Precautions

- Before use, read these safety precautions carefully and use your handset properly. Keep this guide in a safe place for future reference.
- These safety precautions contain information intended to prevent bodily injury to the user and to surrounding people, as well as damage to property, and must be observed at all times.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- These symbols indicate level of harm from failure to observe cautions or improper usage.
Make sure to understand these symbols and precautions before reading this guide.

	Danger	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
	Warning	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
	Caution	Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

- **Symbol Explanations**
Make sure to understand these symbols and precautions before reading this guide.

	Prohibited Action		Avoid Moisture
	Disassembly Prohibited		Always Dry Hands First
	Compulsory Action		Disconnect Power Source

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Desktop Holder, AC Charger (sold separately) & microSD Card (not included)



Danger



Do not use or leave handset or related hardware in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near an open flame/heater, in sunlight or inside a car on an extremely hot day. Do not charge, leave, use, or be carrying handset or related hardware in a warm place or where heat collects, such as under a kotatsu (blanketed warming table) or electric blanket, next to a kairo (worn warming patch), etc. Battery may leak, overheat, explode, or ignite. Handset or related hardware may deform or malfunction. Part of the casing may also become hot and cause burns.



Do not use excessive force to attach battery or connect Charger or Desktop Holder to handset. Battery or connector may be the wrong way around. Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware. May cause accidents such as fire, bodily injury, electric shock or equipment malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Modifying handset is a violation of Radio Law and subject to prosecution.



Do not expose handset internal parts, battery, Charger or Desktop Holder to liquids. If handset interior, battery, Charger or Desktop Holder is left wet or battery is charged after exposure to liquids such as water or pet urine, overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction may occur. Be mindful of location when using handset, battery, Charger or Desktop Holder. Handle with care.



Use specified battery, Charger and Desktop Holder.

Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and Charger may overheat, catch fire or cause malfunction.



Warning



Do not place handset, battery, Charger or Desktop Holder inside cooking appliances, such as microwave ovens or high-pressure containers, or on IH cooking heaters.

Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Handset, Charger or Desktop Holder may overheat, emit smoke, catch fire or cause malfunction.



Do not drop, throw or otherwise subject to strong force or impacts.

Battery may leak, overheat, explode, catch fire, or cause electric shock or damage to handset.



Do not allow liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive objects (pencil lead, metal pieces, necklaces, hair pins, etc.) to contact Charger terminals, external port terminals or microSD Card slot.

May cause fire or malfunction triggered by short-circuit.



Do not charge battery while handset is wet.

May cause electric shock or short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near propane gas, in filling stations or places where flammable gas is generated.

Handset use in such areas may lead to fire. Be sure to turn off handset before using Osaifu-Keitai® in filling stations. (When IC Card Lock is set, turn off handset after unlocking setting.)



If handset, battery, Charger or Desktop Holder emits an unusual sound, smoke or odor, perform following steps:

1. Unplug Charger from outlet.
 2. Turn off handset.
 3. Remove battery. (Take care to avoid burns or injuries.)
- May cause fire or electric shock.



Caution



Do not place handset, battery, Charger or Desktop Holder on an unstable surface.

May fall, causing injury or malfunction. Take extra precautions while vibration alert is active or during charging.



Keep handset and related hardware out of the reach of young children.

May result in accidental ingestion or bodily injury.



If for use by child, guardian should teach proper handling and ensure handset and related hardware is used as directed.

May result in bodily injury.

Battery



Danger

See battery label to confirm battery type.

Label	Battery Type
Li-ion 00	Lithium-ion



Do not throw battery into fire.
Battery may leak, explode or catch fire.



Do not pierce battery with a nail or other sharp object, hit it with a hammer, step on it, or subject it to strong shocks.
Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Do not touch terminals with metallic objects or carry/store battery with conductive objects (pencil lead, metal pieces, necklaces, hair pins, etc.).
Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



If battery fluid gets into eyes, do not rub; flush with clean water and see a doctor immediately.
Failure to do so may cause blindness.



Warning



If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop handset use immediately and rinse fluid off with clean water.
Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.



If battery does not charge after specified time, stop charging.
Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



If battery emits an unusual odor, overheats, discolors or deforms, immediately remove battery and move it away as far as possible from any flame or fire. Take care to avoid burns or injuries.
Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Caution



Do not dispose of battery with ordinary refuse.
Place tape over the terminals to insulate battery, and take it to a SoftBank retailer or institution that handles used batteries in your area. Comply with local waste disposal regulations for recycling.

Handset



Warning



Do not use handset while driving a vehicle.
Doing so may interfere with safe driving and cause an accident. Stop your vehicle to park in a safe place before using handset. Drivers using handsets while driving are subject to prosecution.



Do not aim the infrared port at eyes when using infrared communication.
Doing so may affect eyes.



Do not point Photo light directly at someone's eyes. Do not look directly at Photo light while light is on.
May damage eyesight or cause accidents due to momentary sight loss or surprise. Do not take pictures of infants at close range.

**Turn off handset near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak electronic signals.**

Handset may cause these devices to malfunction.
 *Electronic devices that may be affected: Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemakers, implantable cardioverter defibrillators, other medical electronic devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled devices.

**Turn off handset aboard aircraft.**

Handset signal may interfere with aircraft operation.
 When in-flight handset use is permitted, follow airline instructions for proper use.

**If you have a weak heart, take extra precautions when setting functions such as Vibration or Ringer Volume for incoming transmissions.**

May affect heart.

**In a thunderstorm, immediately turn off handset and seek shelter.**

There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.

**Caution****If handset affects car electronics, stop use.**

Handset use may affect electronics in some models. In this case, stop use; could impede safe driving.

**Do not place a magnetic card near or in handset.**

The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be erased.

**Do not swing handset by its strap, etc.**

Handset may strike you or others, or strap may be broken resulting in injury or damage to handset or other property.

**Do not place your ear too close to the speaker while ringer sounds or sound files play.**

May impair hearing.

**If skin abnormality occurs, immediately stop use and seek medical treatment.**

Handset contains metals. Handset use may cause itching, rashes, eczema or other symptoms depending on the user's physical condition.

Parts		Materials/Surface Finish
Outer case	Display side, Lateral side of Display	PC resin/Evaporated tin, Acrylic UV cured coating
	Rear side of Display, Keypad side	PA resin/ Acrylic UV cured coating
	Battery side, Battery cover	PC+ABS resin/ Acrylic UV cured coating
	Bottom part of Display panel, Screw covers on Battery side	ABS resin/ Acrylic UV cured coating
Hinge	Rear side of Display	PC+ABS resin/Evaporated tin, Acrylic UV cured coating
	Display side	PA resin/ Acrylic UV cured coating
	Screw covers	PET resin
Earpiece area		Acrylic resin/ Hard coating film with evaporated tin
Display panel		PET resin/Hard coating
Corner parts of Display		Elastomer resin
Keypad, Camera ring part, Stop pads		Acrylic urethane resin

Parts		Materials/Surface Finish
Side Key		PC resin/Evaporated aluminium, Acrylic UV cured coating
Notification Light/Charging Indicator		PC resin
Camera lens		Acrylic resin/Hard coating
Photo Light/Infrared port		PC resin/ Acrylic UV cured coating
TV Antenna	Tip: Resin part, Base: Cap	ABS resin/ Acrylic UV cured coating
	Metal part (Upper, middle part)	Stainless steel
	Metal part (Lower part)	NiTi alloy
	Base: Hinge	Stainless steel
	Base: Hinge (Pullout part)	Brass/Tin-cobalt plating
	Base: Cap (Metal part)	Stainless steel
External Port terminals		Stainless steel/ Tin plating on nickel plating
External Port Cover	Port Cover	PC resin, Elastomer resin/ Acrylic UV cured coating
	Packing	Silicon rubber
Charging Terminals		Brass/Gold plating on nickel plating, palladium plating
Inner Cover		PC resin, Silicon rubber
Battery compartment		PC resin
Screws (Battery compartment)		Iron/Chrome plating
microSD Card slot (Battery compartment)	Resin part	LCP resin
	Metal part	Stainless steel/Nickel plating

Parts		Materials/Surface Finish
Battery terminals	Resin part	PPS resin
	Terminals	Beryllium copper/ Gold plating on nickel plating
Battery	Battery	PC resin (Label: PET resin)
	Terminals	Glass fiber reinforced epoxy board/ Gold plating on nickel plating



Handset may become hot while used in a hot environment.

Avoid prolonged skin contact that may result in burns.



Make sure not to trap fingers or objects when opening/closing handset.

May result in injury or damage to display.



Watch TV with adequate lighting and distance from Display.

May damage eyesight.



Do not turn up the volume unnecessarily high when using earphones.

Using earphones with volume turned up for an extended period may impair hearing or injure ears.

Desktop Holder & AC Charger (sold separately)



Warning



Do not cover or wrap Charger or Desktop Holder during charging.

May cause overheating, fire or malfunction.



Always use the specified power supply/voltage.

Using incorrect voltage may cause fire or malfunction.
AC Charger: AC100V-240V (household AC outlet only)
In-Car Charger: DC12V, 24V (vehicles with a negative earth only)



Use In-Car Charger in vehicles with a negative (-) earth. Do not use In-Car Charger if vehicle has a positive (+) earth.

May cause fire.



Do not use Charger in thunderstorms.

There is a risk of suffering electric shock.



Do not expose Charger or Desktop Holder to liquids and high humidity (e.g., precipitation, bath/shower room, restroom, etc.).

May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Do not handle Charger with wet hands.

May cause electric shock or malfunction.



If In-Car Charger fuse blows, always replace it with specified fuse.

Using the incorrect fuse may cause fire or malfunction. Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.



If dust accumulates on plug, unplug Charger and wipe with a dry cloth.

May cause fire.



When plugging Charger into outlet, keep conductive materials (pencil lead, metal parts, necklaces, hair pins, etc.) away from Desktop Holder terminals or Charger plug/terminals and plug Charger firmly into outlet.

May cause electric shock, short-circuit or fire.



Unplug Charger during periods of disuse.

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



If liquid such as water or pet urine get into Charger, unplug it immediately.

May cause electric shock, smoke emission or fire.



Caution



Pull Charger (not cord) to unplug Charger.

Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause electric shock or fire.



Always unplug Charger before cleaning it.

May result in electric shock.

Near Electronic Medical Equipment



Warning

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or cardioverter defibrillator, keep handset more than 22 cm away from the implant at all times.

Handset radio waves may affect implantable cardiac pacemaker or cardioverter defibrillator operations.



Persons using electronic medical equipment outside medical facilities should consult the vendor about possible radio wave effects.

Handset radio waves may affect electronic medical equipment operations.



Observe the following in medical facilities. Handset radio waves may affect electronic medical equipment.

- Do not take handset into operating rooms, Intensive Care Units or Coronary Care Units.
 - Turn off handset inside hospital wards.
 - Turn off handset even outside hospital wards (in hospital lobbies, etc.); electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
 - Where a medical facility has specific instructions prohibiting the carrying and use of mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly.
-



Turn off handset in crowded places such as rush hour trains; implantable cardiac pacemakers or cardioverter defibrillators may be in use nearby.

Handset radio waves may affect implantable cardiac pacemaker or cardioverter defibrillator operations.

Handling Precautions

General Notes

- **SoftBank is not liable for damages from accidental loss/alteration/repair of handset/microSD Card information (Phone Book entries, image/sound files, etc.). Back-up important information.**
- **Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.**
- **Use handset without disturbing others.**
- **Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.**
- **Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.**
- **Read microSD Card manual beforehand for proper use.**
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
Digital signals reduce interception, however transmissions may be overheard. Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.
"eavesdropping" means radio communication is received by another receiver deliberately or accidentally.
- **Be cautious of unsafe websites. Take extra precautions especially when posting personal information on websites.**

Electromagnetic Waves

- **For body worn operation, this mobile phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory containing no metal and positioning the handset a minimum 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.**

FCC Notice

- **This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:**
 - (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
 - (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- **Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organization through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg. The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g. at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model.

The highest SAR value for this model handset as reported to the FCC when tested for use at the ear is 0.582 W/kg, and when worn on the body in a holder or carry case, is 0.286 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly. The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/ea/> after searching on FCC ID UCE210030A. Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 0.327 W/kg*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide**. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.287 W/kg. As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

*The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

** Please see Electromagnetic Waves on page xix for important notes regarding body worn operation.

Declaration of Conformity

CE0168

We, Panasonic Mobile Communications Development of Europe Ltd., declare that SoftBank 942P conforms with the essential and other relevant requirements of the directive 1999/5/EC.

A declaration of conformity to this effect can be found at <http://panasonic.net/pmc/support/index.html>

- This product is only intended for sale in Japan.
- Compliance to the European RTTE directive applies to: SoftBank 942P handset, battery (PMBAY1) and AC Charger (SoftBank ZTDA1, marked MITSUMI).

Handset Care

- **942P is not completely waterproof. Be sure to observe the following:**
 - Use handset with External Port Cover, Inner Cover and Battery Cover tightly closed. Failing to do so may result in malfunction.
 - Malfunction caused by contact with liquids may not be covered by Warranty.
 - Do not install/remove battery or open/close External Port Cover or Battery Cover in rain or when handset is still wet.
 - Accessories and other optional items are not waterproof.
 - Air conditioned air may cause condensation, resulting in corrosion.
- **If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.**
- **Use handset within temperatures of 5°C to 35°C and humidity 35% to 90% (limiting to temporary use in a bathroom within 36°C to 40°C). Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.**

- Handset may become warm during use or charging. This is not malfunction.
- Battery may swell as service life nears end; this is not a problem.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Soiled terminals may cause poor connection. If the terminals are dirty, use a dry cloth or cotton swab to wipe them clean.
- Clean handset with dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid forceful rubbing or scratching handset display.
- Do not subject handset to excessive force.
 - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on a bag with handset inside.
- Do not remove nameplate from handset; doing so invalidates warranty.
- Always turn off handset before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving or sending mail, data may be altered or lost.
- LCD is manufactured with high precision technology, however, some pixels may appear darker/brighter.
- Connect only specified products to External Port.
- While walking, moderate earphone volume to make sounds around you audible and help avoid accidents.
- When holding handset in use, do not cover Speaker.

Function Usage Limits

These functions are disabled after handset replacement/upgrade or service cancellation: Camera; Digital TV; Music Player; S! Appli; Lifestyle-Appli; Wi-Fi.
After a period of disuse, these functions may become unusable.

Multitasking During Calls/Data Transmissions

- Transmission fees apply while other functions are used during a call/data transmission.

Mobile Camera

- Be sure to observe proper etiquette when using the camera.
- Do not expose the camera lens to direct sunlight. Concentrated sunlight through the lens may cause the handset to malfunction.
- Be sure to try taking and previewing pictures before using the camera on important occasions like wedding ceremonies.
- Do not commercially use or transfer pictures taken with the camera without the permission of the copyright holder (photographer), except for personal use.
- Do not use the camera in locations where taking photos and recording videos are prohibited.

Bluetooth®/Wi-Fi

- Bluetooth®/Wi-Fi connection is not guaranteed with all Bluetooth®/Wi-Fi devices.
- Handset complies with Bluetooth®/Wi-Fi security standards. However, this does not ensure 100% security.
- SoftBank is not liable for damages arising from accidental data/information leakage during Bluetooth®/Wi-Fi transmissions.
- Wi-Fi function is only intended for use in Japan. This handset's Wi-Fi function is certified as compliant with the radio standard in Japan. Wi-Fi function should be disabled when travelling outside Japan. Use in other countries may contravene local regulations.
- Bluetooth®/Wi-Fi shares the same frequency band with other industrial/scientific/medical equipment (microwave ovens, etc.), radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereinafter "other radio stations").
 - 1 Before using Bluetooth®/Wi-Fi function, visually check that there are no other radio stations sharing same frequency band nearby.
 - 2 Should interference occur between this handset and other radio stations, move to another place or stop Bluetooth®/Wi-Fi function (stop the transmission) immediately.
 - 3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.
SoftBank Mobile Customer Center;
From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.
From landlines, see 📞 P.19-33 "Customer Service."

Wireless Frequency Bands

● Bluetooth® frequency band information is as follows:



- This radio station uses 2.4 GHz band with FH-SS modulation, and its maximum communication distance is 10 m.
- This radio station uses 2400 – 2483.5 MHz band. Avoiding frequency band of mobile unit identification apparatus is not possible.

● Wi-Fi frequency band information is as follows:



- This radio station uses 2.4 GHz band with DS-SS/OFDM modulation, and its maximum communication distance is 40 m.
- This radio station uses 2400 – 2483.5 MHz band. Avoiding frequency band of mobile unit identification apparatus is possible.

Precautions for Wi-Fi Usage

- Do not use Wi-Fi function near magnetic devices or sources of magnetic waves.
 - Magnetic waves or electrostatic noise may cause noise/interference (especially when a microwave oven is in use).
 - Wi-Fi use near TVs or radios may affect TV/radio reception.
 - When multiple access points using the same channel are nearby, target access point may not be found.

Waterproof Feature

942P complies with IPX5 (former JIS Ingress Protection grade Code 5)¹ and IPX7 (former JIS Ingress Protection Code grade 7)² waterproof standards (External Port Cover, Inner Cover and Battery Cover must be tightly closed).

- ¹ IPX5 compliant: Protection against water projection from water jets (projecting water from a 6.3 mm diameter nozzle at a distance of approximately 3 meters for over 3 minutes at a rate of 12.5 L/min from different directions).
- ² IPX7 compliant: Protection against water leakage when submerged under water (still tap water at room temperature up to 1 meter deep for approximately 30 minutes).

Note: Complete protection is not guaranteed under all conditions. Read User Guide for proper handset use. Malfunctions due to improper handling by the user are not covered by Warranty.

942P Use in the Rain, Bathroom, Poolside, Etc.

Rain

- Talk on handset in moderately heavy rain (rainfall of 20 mm or less per hour).
- Do not use handset in heavy rain (rainfall of 20 mm or more per hour).

Washing Handset

- Rinse handset in fresh water/tap water (at room temperature), using gentle back and forth movement; or under gentle running water (approximately 10 cm from faucet/showerhead at 5°C to 35°C).
- Tightly close Battery Cover and hold down External Port Cover when rinsing handset.
- Do not use brushes, sponges, soaps or detergents.



Leisure

- Do not immerse or drop handset into swimming pool/sea. Do not use handset underwater.
- If pool/sea water spatters on handset, immediately rinse with tap water (room temperature).



Bathroom

- Do not immerse or drop handset into a bathtub. Do not use handset underwater.
- Do not immerse handset into water containing soap, detergent or bath agents or hot spring water.
- Do not expose handset to strong water flow (strong enough to feel pain on skin).
- Avoid using handset in a bathroom for a prolonged period of time.
- Extreme temperature changes can cause condensation. Wait until handset reaches room temperature before bringing it to a bathroom.



Kitchen

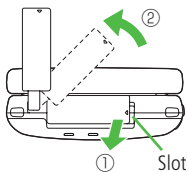
- Do not expose handset to soap water, detergent, spice, juice, etc.
- Do not expose handset to hot/cold water.
- Do not expose handset to strong water flow.

Notes on Usage

- Make sure that External Port Cover, Inner Cover and Battery Cover are tightly closed before use. If small particles (fine fiber, hair, sand, etc.) are caught between Battery Cover, Inner Cover and handset, water leakage may occur.
- If handset comes into contact with any liquids while External Port Cover, Inner Cover or Battery Cover is open, electric shock or malfunction may occur. Turn off handset power and remove battery.
- Do not immerse handset in any liquids other than fresh water or tap water (room temperature).
- Regardless of handset performance, replacing handset parts every two years is recommended. Replace parts at your own expense. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (☎ P.19-33) in your subscription area.

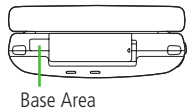
Open External Port Cover

- 1 Lift cover up ① and rotate in direction ②



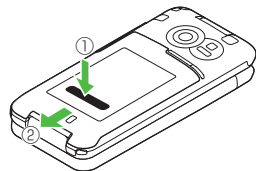
Close External Port Cover

- 1 Align cover with port. Press down on base area, then entire cover
- 2 Make sure cover is completely closed



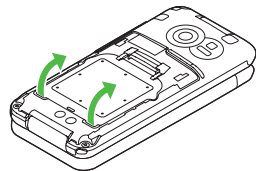
Remove Battery Cover

- 1 Press and slide to detach Cover



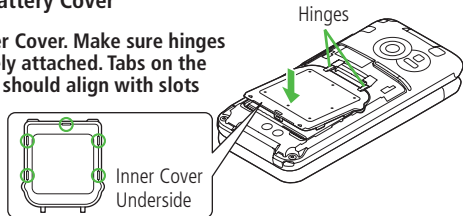
- 2 Lift open Inner Cover by the tabs (as indicated by arrows)

- To maintain water protection, Inner Cover fits tightly. Do not force cover open; may injure nails/fingers.

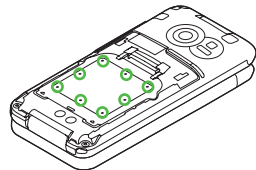


Attach Battery Cover

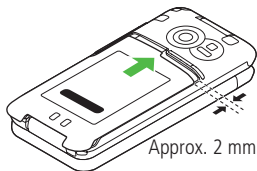
- 1 Close Inner Cover. Make sure hinges are securely attached. Tabs on the underside should align with slots



- 2 Press ● marks to close Cover completely



- 3 Align Cover tabs with handset slots, leaving a 2 mm gap. Slide Cover in direction of arrow to shut completely



- 4 Make sure no gap remains between Cover and handset

- Keypad surface may inflate slightly when attaching Battery Cover. This is not a malfunction; surface will gradually deflate. Use keypad as you would normally; do not press with excessive force. To manually relieve air pressure, first wipe off any moisture from handset surface. Open External Port Cover to let out air then shut cover completely.

Precautions

Handset

- Do not leave handset wet.
 - Doing so may cause short circuit on External Port.
 - Water may leak into keypad or hinge. In cold climates, water drops turn into frost; this may cause malfunction.
- Do not wash handset in a washing machine.
- Handset is not heat resistant. Do not immerse handset in hot water, use it in a sauna or dry it with hot air using a dryer.
- Do not drop handset or subject it to excessive shock. Doing so may deteriorate waterproof performance.
- Handset does not float in water.
- Use handset within temperatures of 5°C to 35°C and humidity of 35% to 90% (handset use in temperature range of 36°C to 40°C should be kept to a minimum). Do not use or store handset in extreme temperatures or under direct sunlight.
- Handset is not water-pressure resistant. Do not expose handset to strong water flow or immerse it in water.

- Do not place handset directly on beach.
 - Sand may enter Microphone, Earpiece or Speaker, impairing volume.
 - Water/sand inside handset may distort sound.
 - Water leakage may occur if sand enters External Port Cover, Inner Cover or Battery Cover.

External Port Cover/Inner Cover/Battery Cover

- Do not open/close External Port Cover, Inner Cover or Battery Cover with gloves on. Small particles may adhere to rubber packing.
- Make sure External Port Cover, Inner Cover or Battery Cover areas are free of fine fibers after wiping off liquids.
- Do not remove rubber packing. Do not insert sharp-edged objects into gaps around External Port Cover, Inner Cover or Battery Cover. Doing so may cause water leakage.
- If External Port Cover or Inner Cover rubber packing is damaged or deformed, replace with new packing.

Microphone/Earpiece/Speaker

- Do not pick Microphone, Earpiece or Speaker holes with sharp-edged objects.
- Thoroughly wipe off water drops; may cause malfunction.

Draining Water from Handset

Even small amounts of water can seep in through keypad or hinge, affecting Speaker/Earpiece volume or sound quality. Drain water as follows:

- 1 Wipe water off handset with clean dry cloth

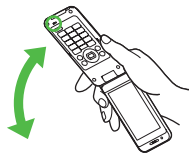


2 Hold handset firmly. Shake handset about 20 times until no water drops come out. Repeat on all sides

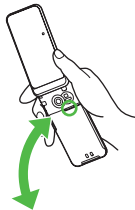
<Drain from Earpiece>



<Drain from Microphone>

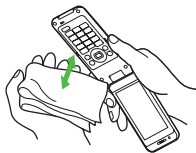


<Drain from Speaker>



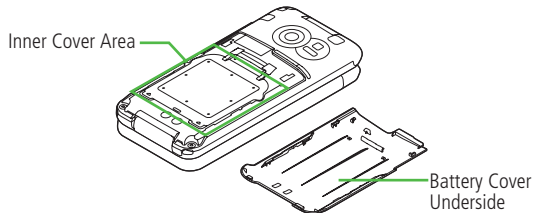
3 Pat handset against a clean dry cloth to remove remaining water from Microphone, Earpiece, Speaker, keypad, hinge, etc.

- Do not wipe gaps directly with a cotton swab.



4 Remove Battery Cover, and wipe water drops off Inner Cover area and Battery Cover underside. Replace Battery Cover

- Never open Inner Cover.
- To remove Battery Cover:  P.xxiv



- Some water may remain on handset even after above steps are followed. Keep handset away from anything that should not get wet.
- Water may remain inside Touch Pen Cap when it is wet.

Charging Battery

Accessories and other optional items are not waterproof. Check following points when/after charging battery.

- Never charge battery when handset is wet. Doing so may cause electric shock or malfunction/fire due to short circuit. Wipe water off handset with clean dry cloth before charging battery.
- Close External Port Cover tightly after charging battery. Use Desktop Holder to charge handset.

Copyrights and Others

Right of Portrait

Portrait right is the right of an individual to refuse to be photographed by others and protects from the unauthorized publication or use of an individual's photograph by others. Right of personality is a portrait right applicable to all citizens and right of publicity is a portrait right (property right) designed to protect celebrities' interests. Be careful when taking pictures with the handset camera. Photographing, publicizing and distributing photographs of citizens and celebrities without permission are illegal.

Copyrights

Sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other copyrighted materials, their respective works and copyright holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplicated materials are limited to private use only. If duplications (including conversion of data types), modifications, transfer of duplicates or distribution on networks are made without permission of copyright holders, this constitutes "Literary Piracy" and "Infringement of Copyright Holder Rights" and a criminal action for reparations and criminal punishment may be filed. If duplicates are made using handset, please observe the copyright laws. Materials captured with handset camera are also subject to the above.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 patent portfolio license, AVC patent portfolio license and VC-1 patent portfolio license for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Visual Standard, AVC Standard and VC-1 Standard ("MPEG-4/AVC/VC-1 Video") and/or

(ii) decode MPEG-4/AVC/VC-1 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider licensed to provide MPEG-4/AVC/VC-1 video.

No license is granted or implied for any other use.

Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C. See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation and third parties. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this products is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary and third parties.

Windows Media®, Microsoft®, Windows® and Windows Vista® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

The abbreviations used for respective operating systems (Japanese version) in this guide are as shown below:

Windows® 7 is the abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 7 (Starter, Home Basic, Home Premium, Professional, Enterprise and Ultimate).

Windows Vista® is the abbreviation of Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, and Ultimate).

Windows® XP is the abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

Microsoft Windows operating system is abbreviated as "Windows" in this guide.

Java and all Java based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.



Aplix, microJBlend and JBlend, and all Aplix- or JBlend-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in the U.S., Japan and other countries.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.



microSDHC Logo is a trademark.

Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta Full® are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Machi-Uta® is a registered trademark of KDDI CORPORATION.

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary.

Content providers are using the digital rights management technology for Windows Media contained in this device ("WM-DRM") to protect the integrity of their content ("Secure Content") so that their intellectual property, including copyright, in such content is not misappropriated. This device uses WM-DRM Software to play Secure Content ("WM-DRM Software"). If the security of the WM-DRM Software in this device has been compromised, owners of Secure Content ("Secure Content Owners") may request that Microsoft revoke the WM-DRM Software's right to acquire new licenses to copy, display and/or play Secure Content. Revocation does not alter the WM-DRM Software's ability to play unprotected content. A list of Revoked WM-DRM Software is sent to your device whenever you download a license for Secure Content from the Internet or from a PC. Microsoft may, in conjunction with such license, also download revocation lists onto your device on behalf of Secure Content Owners.

This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, follow these steps: *Main Menu* → *Settings* → *Phone Settings* → *GPL License* etc.



Bluetooth®

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

This product is loaded with Bluetooth™ Stack for Embedded Systems Spec 2.0 by Toshiba Corp.

Powered by MascotCapsule®
MascotCapsule® is a registered trademark of HI CORPORATION
© 2010 HI CORPORATION. All Rights Reserved.

The image stabilization technology utilized is PhotoSolid®, a product of Morpho, Inc.
The fast image rendering engine utilized is ImageSurf®, a product of Morpho, Inc.
PhotoSolid® and ImageSurf® are registered trademarks of Morpho, Inc.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.

FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.

 is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.

"Osaifu-Keitai" is a registered trademark of NTT DoCoMo, Inc. in Japan.

NetFront®
Mobile Client Suite

ACCESS™

This product contains NetFront Mobile Client Suite of ACCESS CO., LTD. ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and other countries. ©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

IrFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.

The IrDA Feature Trademark is owned by the Infrared Data Association and used under license therefrom.

**ADOBE®
FLASH®** 
ENABLED

This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ Player under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Copyright© 1996-2008 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved.

Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

"AutoArt" adopted by this product is based on Emoji Lite®, protected by the intellectual property rights of Acrodea, Inc.

AirStation™ and AOSS™ are the trademarks of BUFFALO INC.

The Twitter name, logo, Twitter T and Tweet are trademarks of Twitter, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

SOFTBANK, SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese and the SOFTBANK logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

S! Mail, Navi Appli, MOBILE WIDGET, Graphic Mail, PC Mail, Location Navi and Keitai Wi-Fi are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Yahoo! and the "Yahoo!" or "Y!" logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc. in the U.S.

This product is manufactured or sold under license from InterDigital Technology Corporation.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

The software contained in 942P is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

942P meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the head, shall not exceed 2 W/kg*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law.

942P has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is 0.360 W/kg. This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network. Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites:

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm>

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)

<http://www.arib-emf.org/> (Japanese only)

* Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

About Handset	1-2
Display Positions and Operations	1-2
Viewer Position	1-2
Motion Control	1-3
USIM Card	1-4
About USIM Card	1-4
USIM Card Installation	1-5
USIM PINs.....	1-5
Parts & Functions	1-6
Handset	1-6
Key Operations in Standby	1-8
Display.....	1-10
About Battery	1-12
Before Charging	1-12
Battery Installation	1-13
Charging Battery.....	1-14
Handset Power On/Off	1-15
Manner Mode	1-16
Minding Mobile Manners	1-16
Manner-related Features.....	1-16
Activating Manner Mode.....	1-17
Activating Offline Mode.....	1-17
Activating Driving Mode	1-17
Handset Menus	1-18
Main Menu	1-18
Menu Numbers	1-19

Standby Options	1-20
Information Window.....	1-20
Shortcuts.....	1-21
Accessing Functions/Info from Standby	1-21
Functions Available in Standby Window	1-22
Customizing User Interface	1-22
Customized Screen.....	1-22
Changing Display Font.....	1-23
Private Menu	1-24
Opening Private Menu.....	1-24
Customizing Private Menu	1-24
Adding Shortcuts.....	1-24
Simple Menu	1-25
Activating Simple Menu.....	1-25
Simple Menu.....	1-26
Using Videos/Music	1-27
Passwords	1-28
Phone Password.....	1-28
Center Access Code.....	1-28
Security Code	1-28
Multi Task	1-29
Activating Another Function.....	1-29
Ending Current Functions	1-29
View Blind	1-30
My Number	1-30
Viewer Position	1-31
Touch Panel Operations	1-31
Display Lock	1-33
Touch Panel Menu	1-34

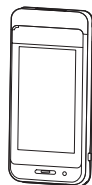
About Handset

Use 942P in Normal Position and Viewer Position. Operations and functions vary by Display position.

Display Positions and Operations

Normal Position

Viewer Position

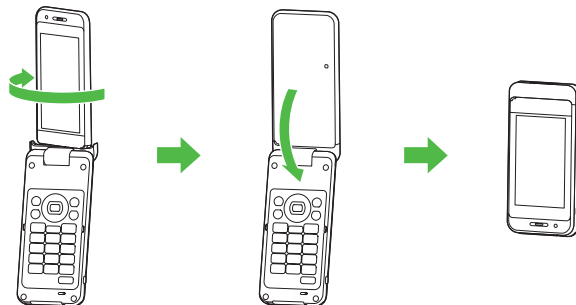


Calls	Available	N/A
Key Operations	Available	N/A
Touch Panel Operations	N/A	Available

- Touch Panel Operations: P.1-31

Viewer Position

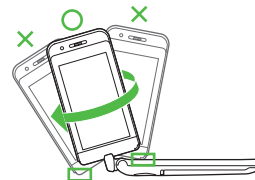
Rotate Display 180° clockwise and close.



- To return to Normal Position, open Display part and rotate 180° counterclockwise.

Note

- Keep Display from striking Keypad or a table.
- Do not rotate to the other way.
- Do not rotate more than 180°.



Note

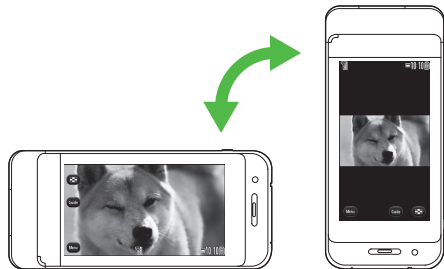
- Return to previous position or press (in Viewer Position, press /) to end active function when message appears.

Motion Control

In Viewer Position, rotate handset 90° counterclockwise for Landscape View; rotate 90° clockwise to return to Portrait View.

Motion Control Function Available for:

- Still images
- S! Appli (Motion Control-compatible apps only)
- Yahoo! Keitai (Motion Control is OFF by default)
- PC Site Browser/Direct Browser
- Mobile Widget/S! Information Channel, etc.



Note

- In Normal Position, Motion Control is only available for active S! Appli.
- Motion Control may not function depending on handset angle.
- For still images, Motion Control is available for 90°, 180°, 270° and 360° Display orientation.

Tip

Settings

- Motion Control
- Customize Motion Control (☞ P.18-6)

1

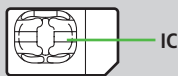
Getting Started

USIM Card

About USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number, and limited Phone Book entry and SMS message storage. USIM must be inserted to use handset or Network services (calling, messaging, Internet, etc.). Turn handset off before inserting/removing USIM Card.

USIM Card



- Insert USIM Card into other compatible SoftBank handset to use information saved on USIM Card.
- Use SoftBank specified USIM Card only; non-specified USIM Cards may not function properly.
- Do not insert USIM Card into other IC card devices. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Keep IC portion clean.
- Do not damage, carelessly touch or short-circuit IC chip; doing so may result in loss of data or malfunction.
- Remove dust/debris with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not place labels, etc. on USIM Card; may cause failure.
- If handset is dropped/subjected to shock, handset may return to Standby. This is not a malfunction.

If **USIM not inserted After power-off Insert USIM** appears, re-insert USIM Card properly then restart handset.

Important

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon service cancellation.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- If USIM Card/handset with USIM Card inserted is lost or stolen, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center or Global Call Center (☎ P.19-33).
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- USIM Card specifications/performance may change without prior notice.
- Pre-installed S! Appli may be unusable while a different or replacement USIM Card is inserted into handset.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.

Note

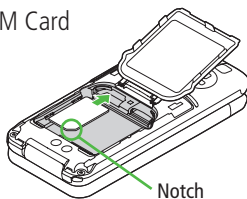
- Some downloaded files may be inaccessible after upgrades/repairs, USIM Card/handset replacement.

USIM Card Installation

- Always turn off handset power before removing battery. (Remove Battery Cover: [P.xxiv/Remove Battery](#): [P.1-13](#))

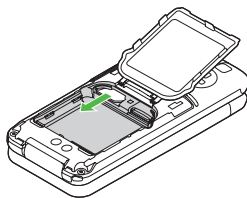
Inserting

- 1 With IC chip down, insert USIM Card



Removing

- 1 Slide out USIM Card gently



Note

- Do not force USIM Card into or out of handset; may damage handset/USIM Card.
- Be careful not to lose the removed USIM Card.
- Avoid touching USIM Card terminals or IC chip; doing so may hinder performance/USIM Card recognition.

USIM PINs

There are two USIM Card security codes: PIN & PIN2

- PIN and PIN2 are set to **9999** by default.
- PIN/PIN2 can be changed ([P.12-3](#)).

<p>PIN</p>	<p>4 to 8-digit code used to prevent unauthorized handset use.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When PIN Authentication (P.12-2) is ON, PIN entry is required each time handset is turned on (with USIM Card inserted).
<p>PIN2</p>	<p>Required to clear call times/costs or set maximum cost (P.18-9).</p>

PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK/PUK2)

PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated if PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times. Cancel PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock by entering the PIN Unlocking Key (PUK/PUK2) ([P.12-3](#)).

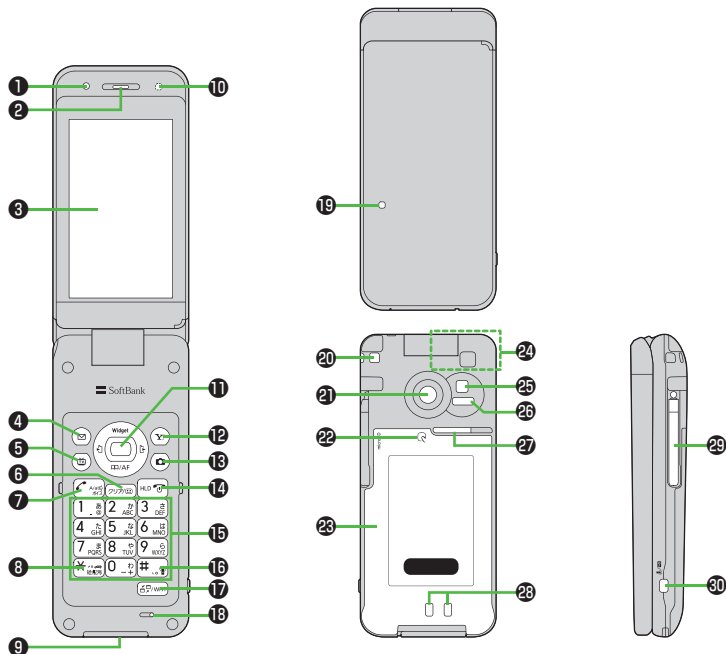
- For information on PUK/PUK2, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information ([P.19-33](#)).

Note

- If PUK/PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten times, USIM Card is locked and handset is disabled. Write down PUK/PUK2.
- For procedures required to unlock USIM Card, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information ([P.19-33](#)).

Parts & Functions

Handset



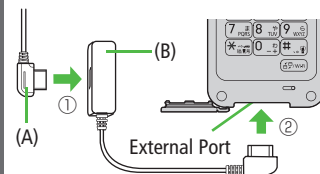
Using Earphone Microphone or Video Output Cable

Connect following accessories (A) and (B) to External Port.

- (A) Earphone Microphone or Video Output Cable
- (B) Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

<Operation>

- ① Connect flat plug (A) to flat terminal (B)
- ② Connect plug (B) to External Port
















- Do not press microphone button when connecting Earphone Microphone. Doing so may cause malfunction. If pressed accidentally, unplug then reconnect earphone.

- 1 Light Sensor**
- Detects ambient light
- 2 Earpiece**
- 3 Display/Touch Panel**
- 4 Mail Key**
- Open Messaging menu
 - Execute Upper Left Softkey function (P.ix)
- 5 TV Key**
- Activate TV
 - Execute Lower Left Softkey function (P.ix)
- 6 Clear/Memo Key**
- Delete characters
 - Cancel menus
 - Use Answer Phone
- 7 Send Key**
- Initiate or answer calls
 - Toggle upper/lower case in text entry windows
 - Use Voice Dial
- 8 */Driving Mode Key**
- Enter " * "
 - Access pictographs/symbols/smiley/URLs in text entry windows
 - Toggle Driving Mode On/Off
- 9 External Port**
- Connect AC Charger, Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or other accessories here
- 10 Charging Indicator**
- Lights in red for charging
- 11 Multi Selector**
- Scroll up/down/left/right to navigate menus and text (P.ix)
 - Select indicators/icons/S! Quick News
 - Open Phone Book
 - Open Incoming Call Logs
 - Open Redial logs
- 12 Yahoo! Keitai Key**
- Open Yahoo! Keitai top menu
 - Execute Upper Right Softkey function (P.ix)
- 13 Camera Key**
- Activate Camera/Video Camera
 - Execute Lower Right Softkey function (P.ix)
- 14 End/Escapes & Power Key**
- Power on/off (P.1-15)
 - End calls
 - Return to Standby
- 15 Keypad**
- Enter phone number/text
- 16 #/Manner Key**
- Enter " # "
 - Toggle Manner Mode
- 17 MULTI/Wi-Fi Switch Key**
- Open TASK MENU
 - Toggle Wi-Fi function On/Off
- 18 Microphone**
- 19 Notification Light/Charging Indicator**
- Flashes for incoming transmissions
 - Lights in red for charging
- 20 Strap Eyelet**
- 21 Camera**
- 22 Logo**
- Place Logo over a reader/writer when using Osaifu-Keitai® (P.13-11)
- 23 Battery Cover**
- Open Inner Cover and insert/remove USIM Card/Battery/microSD Card
- 24 Antenna**
- 25 Photo light**
- Lights/flashes during Camera use
 - Use when shooting in dark places
- 26 Infrared Port**
- Transfer data via Infrared
- 27 Speaker**
- 28 Charging Terminals**
- 29 TV Antenna**
- 30 Side Key**
- Activate Camera/capture images
- [Handset Closed]
- Toggle Manner Mode On/Off
 - Check missed calls/new messages
- [In Viewer Position]
- End function
 - Set Display Lock

Key Operations in Standby

Press or press and hold (more than one second) a key in Standby to execute the following.

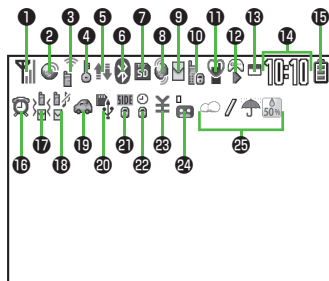
Key Operations		Functions
	Short Press	Initiate a call
	Long Press	Voice dial
	Short Press	N/A
	Long Press (2+ sec)	Turn off power
	Short Press	Open Main Menu
	Long Press	Activate/cancel Keyguard
	Short Press	Play Answer Phone
	Long Press	Activate/cancel Answer Phone
	Short Press	Activate Camera
	Long Press	Activate Video Camera
	Short Press	Activate Digital TV
	Long Press	Activate/cancel IC Card Lock
	Short Press	Open Messaging Menu
	Long Press	Open S! Mail Composition window
	Short Press	Access Yahoo! Keitai
	Long Press	Open Yahoo! Keitai Menu
	Short Press	Open TASK MENU
	Long Press	Toggle Wi-Fi on/off
	Short Press	Select indicators/icons/ticker
	Long Press	Activate slideshow

Key Operations		Functions
	Short Press	Open Phone Book search window
	Long Press	Open Phone Book entry window
	Short Press	Open Incoming Call Logs
	Long Press	Open Received address logs
	Short Press	Open Redial logs
	Long Press	Open Sent address logs
①	Short Press	Enter "1"
	Long Press	Open Phone Book page "あ"
②	Short Press	Enter "2"
	Long Press	Open Phone Book page "か"
③	Short Press	Enter "3"
	Long Press	Open Phone Book page "さ"
④	Short Press	Enter "4"
	Long Press	Open Phone Book page "た"
⑤	Short Press	Enter "5"
	Long Press	Open Phone Book page "な"
⑥	Short Press	Enter "6"
	Long Press	Open Phone Book page "は"
⑦	Short Press	Enter "7"
	Long Press	Open Phone Book page "ま"
⑧	Short Press	Enter "8"
	Long Press	Open Phone Book page "や"
⑨	Short Press	Enter "9"
	Long Press	Open Phone Book page "ら"
⑩	Short Press	Enter "0"
	Long Press	Open Phone Book page "わ"

Key Operations		Functions
✖	Short Press	Enter "✖"
	Long Press	Activate/cancel Driving Mode
#	Short Press	Enter "#"
	Long Press	Activate/cancel Manner Mode
□ (Cam / 📷)	Short Press	Activate Camera
	Long Press	Activate Camera

Display

Display Indicators



- **16 - 24** Settings
Shows current settings. Access settings menu from these indicators. (👉 P.1-21)

1 Signal Strength

- 📶 Strong 📶 Moderate 📶 Weak 📶 Low
- 🔌 Offline Mode Active
- OUT Out-of-Range

- 📶 Packet Transmission in Progress (PC)
 - 📶 Dial-up Connection Established on PC
 - 📶 3G/GSM Packet Transmitting
 - 📶 Operator (set for Select Operator) Out-of-Range
 - 📶 / 📶 3G/GSM Packet Transmission Available*
 - 📶 / 📶 3G/GSM Packet Transmission Unavailable*
* Appears only while abroad
- 📶 Wi-Fi On (Out-of-Range)
 - 📶 / 📶 Keitai Wi-Fi/Direct Access Available (In-Range/Transmitting)
 - 📶 / 📶 Direct Access Available (In-Range/Transmitting)
- 🔒 Secure Content
 - 📧 S! Addressbook Back-up Synchronizing
 - ⚙️ Auto Sync Settings Active
- 🖥️ PC Site Browser Active
 - 🖥️ Direct Browser Active
 - 📶 Infrared Transmission
 - 📶 IC Transmission
 - 📶 USB Cable Connected
 - 🔒 Keypad Active
- 📶 Software Update (Notification/Updating/Result)
 - 📧 Voice Mail
 - 📶 (Blue) Bluetooth® Device Connected
 - 📶 (Black) Bluetooth® Power Save Mode
- microSD Card**
 - 📶 Inserted
 - 📶 Reading/Writing Data
 - 📶 Write-protected
 - 📶 Unsupported
 - 📶 Unusable
 - USB Cable (Not Included) Connected**
 - 📶 microSD Mode
 - 📶 MTP Mode
 - During Call**
 - 📶 During Video Call
 - 📶 During Voice Call
- 📶 Positioning
 - 📶 New S! Quick News Information
 - 📶 New S! Information Channel info

- 9 Unsent Message
- Unread Message
- Incoming Mail Memory Full

10 Security

- Privacy Key Lock Active
 - Personal Data Lock Active
 - Key Pad Dial Lock Active
 - IC Card Lock Active
 - Secret Mode and Secret Data Only Active
 - Key Pad Dial Lock, Secret Mode and Secret Data Only Active
 - Key Pad Dial Lock and Personal Data Lock Active
 - Secret Mode, Secret Data Only and IC Card Lock Active
 - Privacy Key Lock and IC Card Lock Active
 - Personal Data Lock and IC Card Lock Active
 - Key Pad Dial Lock and IC Card Lock Active
 - Key Pad Dial Lock, Secret Mode, Secret Data Only and IC Card Lock Active
 - Key Pad Dial Lock, Personal Data Lock and IC Card Lock Active
- 11 Manner Mode Active
- Manner Mode (set in User Mode)

12 S! Appli

- Active/Paused
 - Auto Start Request Received
 - Start Request Received while Active/Paused
- 13 One Function Active
- Multiple Functions Active
 - Digital TV Active
 - During Timer Recording
 - Recording TV Program/Paused
 - Music Playback/Paused
- 14 Time
- 15 Battery Level
- → → (Red)
- 16 (Red) Alarm Set (Today)
- (Blue) Alarm Set (After Today)
- 17 Vibration Active (Incoming Call)
- Vibration Active (Incoming Message)
 - Vibration Active (Incoming Call/Message)
- 18 Incoming Call Ringtone Disabled
- Incoming Message Ringtone Disabled
 - Incoming Call/Message Ringtone Disabled
- 19 Driving Mode

- 20 Communication Mode set for USB Mode
- microSD Mode set for USB Mode
 - MTP Mode set for USB Mode
- 21 Side Key Disabled when Handset Closed
- 22 Timer Lock at Close Active
- 23 Call Charge Reached Upper Limit
- Back Light OFF
 - View Blind ON
 - Back Light OFF; View Blind ON
- 24 Answer Phone Active (Number of Recorded Messages (Voice Calls))
- Answer Phone Active (Number of Recorded Messages (Video Calls))
- 25 Weather Indicator (☞ P.8-3)


Note

- To show indicator description: **Main Menu**
 ► **Settings** ► **Display Settings**
 ► **Describe Icons** ► to highlight an indicator

About Battery

Before Charging

Charge battery before use or after a period of disuse (AC Charger sold separately).

- Charging Time & Operating Time Estimates:  P.19-25

About Battery

- Clean handset, battery & charger with dry cotton swab.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Charge battery at least once every six months.
- Use a case when carrying battery separately.



Charging

- Battery must be installed to charge it.
- It may take longer for charging when handset is on.
- Move charger away from TV/radio if interference occurs.

Battery Time


- Using handset in the following conditions may shorten battery time.
 - Extreme temperatures
 - Handset/battery/AC Charger terminals are dirty
 - Weak signal/out-of-range
 - Handset is left mid-operation (not in Standby)
 - Playing Music Player, Wi-Fi is on, TV or S! Appli is active, etc.
- Extending battery time


Example:

 - Turn Back Light Time **OFF** or set a shorter time for Power Saver mode ( P.18-5)
 - Select **OFF** for Key Tone ( P.18-3)

When Battery Runs Out

- **Unless a Call is in Progress**

A message appears and warning tone sounds for 10 seconds. Handset power turns off automatically after one minute; press any key except  (On/📞) to cancel warning tone manually. Charge or replace battery.

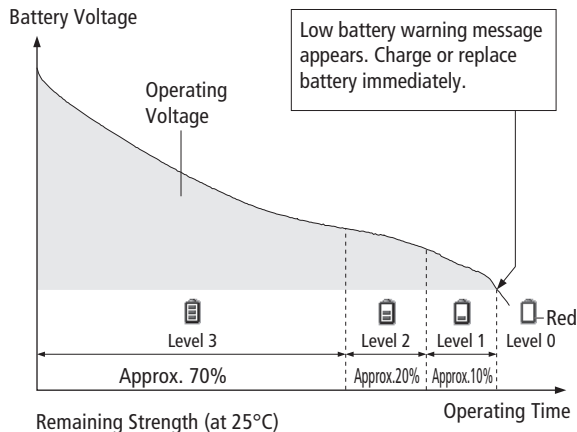
 - If Manner Mode is active, nothing sounds.
 - To stop warning tone, press  (On/📞) while handset is closed.

- **During a Call**

A message appears and warning tone sounds via Earpiece or Speaker. After 20 seconds, call ends and handset shuts down in one minute. Charge or replace battery.

Battery Strength Indicator

- Battery Strength indicator changes as remaining usage time decreases. Charge or replace battery when battery level is low (☞ P.1-11) or a message appears on Display.



Note

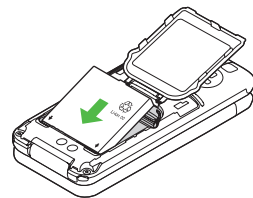
- Alternatively, check battery level from **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Phone Settings** ► **Battery** ► **Battery Level**

Battery Installation

- Always turn off handset power before removing Battery Cover and opening Inner Cover (☞ P.xxiv).

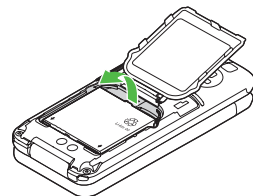
Insert Battery

- 1 Align battery contacts with handset pins



Remove Battery

- 1 Lift battery out as shown



Note

- Lithium-ion batteries are valuable and recyclable resources.
 - Recycle used lithium-ion battery at a shop displaying the symbol shown to the right.
 - To avoid fire or electric shock, do not:
 - Short-circuit battery
 - Disassemble battery

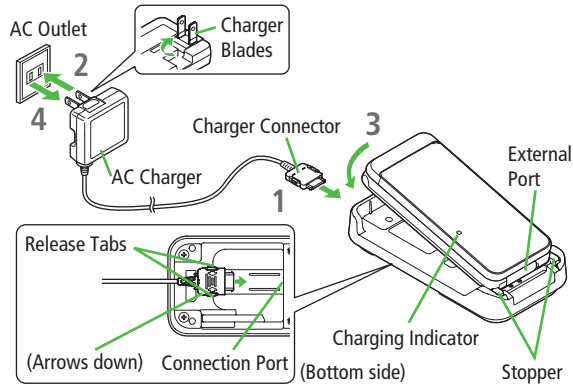


Li-ion 00

Charging Battery

Use Desktop Holder with AC Charger (sold separately) to charge battery.

- Use only specified AC Charger.
- Charging time: P.19-25



1 Connect AC Charger to Desktop Holder

Insert Charger Connector (arrows down) into Connection Port.

2 Extend Charger Blades, and plug AC Charger into AC Outlet

3 Align External Port with Stopper, and push handset in the direction of arrow until it clicks

Charging Indicator illuminates and charging starts.

When charging is complete, Charging Indicator goes out.

- When Charging Indicator flashes, remove handset from Desktop Holder and battery from handset then attach them again.
- Charge Sound is heard when charging starts/ends.
When handset is turned off or in Manner Mode, nothing sounds.

4 When charging is complete, remove handset from Desktop Holder and unplug AC Charger from AC Outlet

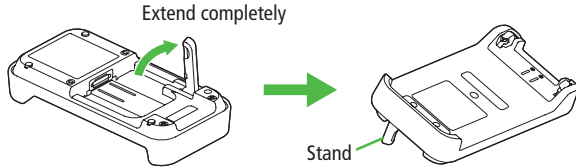
Fold back Charger Blades after unplugging AC Charger.

Squeeze Release Tabs and pull straight out to remove Charger Connector.

Desktop Holder Stand

Use Desktop Holder as a handset stand when viewing TV or videos (Viewer Position). Extend Stand as pictured below.

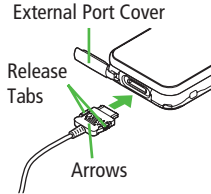
- Hold Desktop Holder for handset operations.



Charging with AC Charger Only

Insert Charger Connector (arrows up) into External Port. To remove, squeeze Release Tabs and pull straight out.

- Open/Close External Port Cover: [P.xxiv](#)



Note

- Make sure not to get strap caught between handset and Desktop Holder.
- For details, read AC Charger instructions.

Tip

Settings

- Start/End Charging Tone ([P.18-3](#))

Handset Power On/Off

1 Press and hold

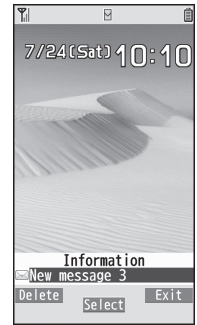
Start-up window and waterproof precautions appear and handset enters Standby.

- Enter PIN if PIN Authentication is ON ([P.12-2](#)).

2 Press for 2+ seconds

Handset shuts down.

- Do not turn on handset immediately after turning off. Wait a few seconds.



Standby

Initial Setup



The first time handset powers up and Initial setting window appears, select **YES** and set the following: (Each item can be set separately.)

Date & Time* (P.18-9)	Set date and time
Phone Password (P.12-2)	Enter 9999 , and enter new Phone Password (4-8 digits)
Key Tone (P.18-3)	Select ON or OFF
Font Size (P.18-6)	Set Display font size all at once

* May be automatically set

View Information Messages




At time of purchase, information messages are provided for your convenience.

- Highlight an item (☞ P.1-20), then press 
-  → **Incoming Mail** → **Received** → Select a message
Widgets and S! Quick News appear in Standby after a message is opened.

Note

- If **USIM not inserted After power-off Insert USIM** appears, clean and properly re-insert USIM Card then restart handset.
- When handset is open or in Viewer Position, Display turns off after a period of inactivity.

Retrieving Network Information

When , ,  or  is pressed for the first time in Standby, handset may initiate Network Information retrieval; press  to retrieve it.

- Update Network Information to use messaging, Internet, etc.
- Update Network Information manually: **Main Menu** ► **Settings**
► **Connectivity** ► **Retrieve NW Info** ► **YES**

Tip

- Settings** ● Wallpaper ● Add Calendar to Wallpaper ● Change Wallpaper Randomly (☞ P.18-3)
● Start-up Window (☞ P.18-4)

Manner Mode

Minding Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner-related Features

Manner Mode (☞ P.1-17)	Mute handset tones and activate vibration for incoming transmissions.
Vibration Mode (☞ P.18-2)	Activate in public places, meetings, etc. for silent call/message alerts.
Ringer Volume (☞ P.18-2)	Adjust call/message tones, etc.
Offline Mode (☞ P.1-17)	Suspend all handset transmissions.
Answer Phone (☞ P.2-15)	Use to handle incoming calls when inappropriate/unsafe to answer.
Driving Mode (☞ P.1-17)	While driving, send a voice message informing the caller that you cannot answer the call. (Handset does not ring.)

Activating Manner Mode

Press one key to mute handset tones and activate vibration for incoming transmissions.

- Manner Mode settings can be changed (☞ P.18-7).
- When Manner Mode is active, 📵 appears.

- In Standby, press and hold **#**
 - To cancel: Press and hold **#** again



Note

- Shutter click and incoming tone via Earphone (**Level 1**) sound even in Manner Mode.
- When activating Music Player or Digital TV in Manner Mode, confirmation appears asking whether to cancel Manner Mode.
- When Prefer manner mode is **OFF** (☞ P.13-7), Alarm sounds even if Manner Mode is active.

Activating Offline Mode

Temporarily suspend all handset transmissions; when active, all calls/messages and incoming information are blocked.

- When Offline Mode is active, 📵 appears.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Offline Mode

- YES**
 - To cancel: Follow the same steps

Note

- Offline Mode disables Bluetooth®/Wi-Fi/Infrared/IC transmissions. Bluetooth® handsfree devices cannot be used either.

Activating Driving Mode

Handset does not ring for incoming calls. Voice guidance informs the caller you are unavailable and handset records voice/video messages.

- When Driving Mode is active, 🚗 appears.

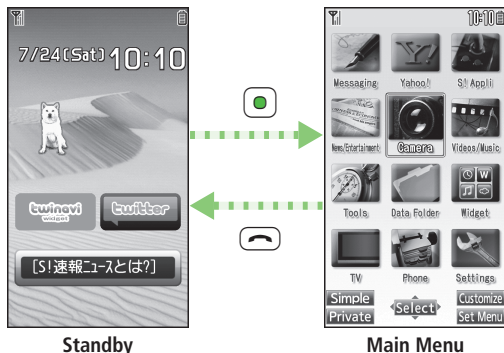
- In Standby, press and hold ***#**
 - To cancel: Press and hold ***#** again

Note

- When Answer Phone memory is full, incoming calls are rejected.
- Ringtone sounds through Earphone Microphone when connected.

Handset Menus

Main Menu



- In Standby,** Main Menu appears.
 - To change Main Menu theme:
 - [Set Menu] → Select a theme
- to highlight an icon** → [Select]
 - Selected function menu appears.
 - To return to Standby:

Note

- Standby window returns after 15 seconds of inactivity in Main Menu.

Main Menu Icons

Messaging Create new/view received messages	Yahoo! (Yahoo! Keitai) Enjoy Mobile Net & PC Site browsing...	S! Appli Download, set and use S! Appli
News/Entertainment View news/weather forecasts or post blogs	Camera Capture images or record videos	Videos/Music Play music, videos, etc.
Tools Set Alarm or save Calendar entries...	Data Folder Open files saved on handset/microSD Card	Widget (Mobile Widget) Use Mobile Widget
TV View TV or record/timer-record programs	Phone Access Phone Book, save contact information...	Settings Adjust/customize handset settings

Tip

- Settings** ● Display Color Scheme ● Main Menu Icons ● Main Menu Background (☞ P.18-4)

Menu Numbers

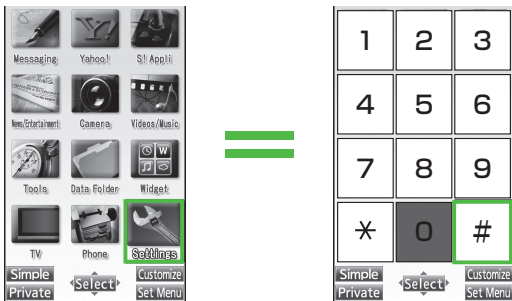
Use keypad to select functions or menu items.

Unnumbered Menu Items

When numbers do not appear, select items as shown.

Main Menu

to select **Settings** from Main Menu



- Press (0) to show Account Details. To open Phone top menu, select **Phone** using ☒.

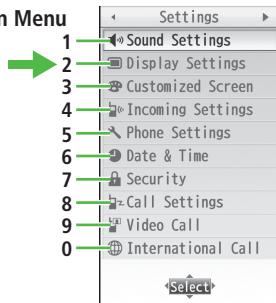
When Menu Icons is Set to Basic or Customize

Menus cannot be selected from Main Menu by keypad.

Open menu items by entering specific number in Main Menu (Quick Open Menu): ☞ P.19-14).

Top Menu Opened from Main Menu

(2) to select **Display Settings**

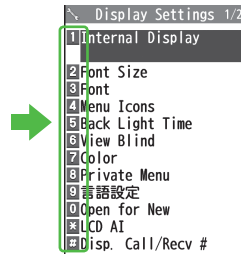


Example: Settings Top Menu

Numbered Menu Items

Press key corresponding to menu number to select a menu.

In Display Settings (from **Settings** Top Menu), (5) to select **Back Light Time**



Standby Options

Access the following from Standby.

Available Items

- Information Window (☞ Below)
- Mobile Widget (☞ P.7-2)
- S! Quick News (☞ P.8-5)
- S! Information Channel/Weather (☞ P.8-2)
- Shortcuts (☞ P.1-21)
- Status Indicators (☞ P.1-10)
- Date & Time (☞ P.18-5)

Information Window

In Standby, Information window opens to notify of missed events. Select a notification to view/access information.

- Widgets and shortcuts do not appear while Information window is open.

Notifications

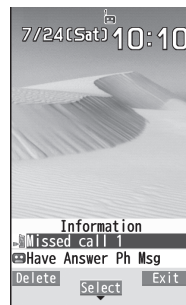
Missed calls	Missed calls (☞ P.2-13)
New message	New messages (☞ P.14-12)
Have Answer Ph Msg	Recorded caller messages (☞ P.2-15)
Voice mail	New Voice Mail messages (☞ P.2-19)
Had incoming call(s)	If Missed Call Notification is active, indicator appears for calls missed while handset is off, out-of-range, engaged, etc. (☞ P.2-19)
New S! Info Channel	Received S! Information Channel updates (☞ P.8-2)
New Weather	Received weather forecast updates (☞ P.8-3)

Other Notifications

- Missed alarm (☞ P.13-6)
- S! Appli startup notice (☞ P.16-3)
- Missed location information request/Auto location information notice (☞ P.17-3)
- Timer (☞ P.5-13)
- Content Key (☞ P.10-5)
- Wi-Fi Auto-OFF notice (☞ P.11-11)
- Software Update result (☞ P.19-13)

1 Highlight an item → [Select]

Follow onscreen instructions.
Widgets and shortcuts re-appear when all items have been viewed.



Close Information Window

> [Exit] / [POWER] / [HOME] → OK (Select **Confirm once** to show confirmation only once)

Open Information Window

> [HOME]


Delete All Items

> While Information window is open, [Delete] → YES

Shortcuts

Add shortcuts to Standby for quick access to frequently used functions.

- Some functions are not available for shortcuts.

- Open a function,  [Menu] →
Add shortcut icon → YES









Note

- Rearrange shortcuts or edit title ( P.1-22).

Accessing Functions/Info from Standby

Select indicators/icons/ticker in Standby to access functions and information.


- In Standby, 
-  to highlight an item →
 [Select]
Function or information appears.
Follow onscreen instructions.
 - Press and hold  to scroll yellow selector.
 - To cancel selection:  or 



Note

- Some items can be moved or edited ( P.1-22).

View Widgets



> After Step 1,  [Switch]





- To return to Standby:  [Switch]
- Activate widgets from Widget Icon List ( P.7-4)

Note

- Alternatively, after Step 1, press  to access Widget Icon List. Press and hold  to return to Standby.

Functions Available in Standby Window

- 1 In Standby, 
- 2 Highlight an indicator/icon/ticker →  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Auto arrange ¹	Automatically align shortcuts
Edit title ¹	Edit shortcut title > Edit title
S! Quick News set. ²	Register S! Quick News items ( P.8-5), customize Display Settings ( P.18-18)
Move	>  to move to a target location →  [Select]
Delete	Delete from Standby window > YES
Forward	Move overlapping item to foreground
Rear	Move overlapping item to background
Reload	Update information
Stand-by Display	Change wallpaper > Select a folder → Select a folder → Select a file

¹ Shortcuts only

² S! Quick News only

Note

- Some functions are unavailable depending on indicator/icon/ticker.
- Status indicators and Weather Indicators cannot be deleted/moved.

Customizing User Interface

Customized Screen

Download and set Customized Screen to personalize user interface, ringtone, etc. to a selected theme.

Downloading Customized Screen

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Customized Screen







1 Customized Screen → YES

List of websites appears.

Select a website and follow onscreen instructions.

- To manage Customized Screen applications in Data Folder:
 P.10-10

Setting Customized Screen

- 1 In Standby,  →  [Customize] → *Customized Screen*
 - 2 Highlight a theme →  [Set]
 - To toggle thumbnail and list:  [Change]
 - 3 **YES**
- Cancel Customized Screen**
 > In Standby,  →  [Customize] → *Release Settings* → **YES**

Note

- Customized Screen cannot be set when battery is low.
- Other functions are not available while switching. For some seconds after switching is complete, all calls/messages may be blocked.
- Alternatively, **Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Customized Screen**
- When Simple menu is active, Customized Screen settings are not reflected. To reflect settings, cancel Simple menu.
- When Customized Screen cannot be canceled, enter **6368##** in Standby → *Release Settings* → **YES**

Changing Display Font

Change Display font. Fonts can also be downloaded.

Downloading Fonts

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Display Settings ▶ Font

1 *Download Font* → **YES**

Follow onscreen instructions.

- For details on Font folder (Data Folder):  P.10-10

Note

- While Personal Data Lock is set, fonts cannot be downloaded.
- Alternatively, download from **Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Font ▶ Download Font ▶ YES**

Changing Font

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Display Settings ▶ Font

1 Select a folder → Highlight a font → [Set]

Note




- Alternatively, change fonts from **Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Font**

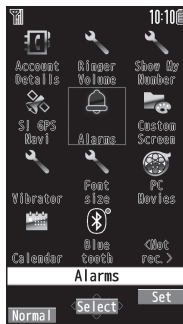
Private Menu

Save frequently used functions in Private Menu.

- Up to 12 items can be saved.
- Change preset functions as needed.

Opening Private Menu

- In Standby,  →  [Private]
Private Menu appears.
 - To return to Main Menu:  [Normal]
- Select a menu



Private Menu Window

Change Private Menu Background

- > After Step 1,  [Set] →  [Menu] → *Change BG image* → Select a folder → Select an image

Customizing Private Menu

- In Standby,  →  [Private] →  [Set]
- Highlight a target →  [Menu] → *Add to menu*
- Select an item
 - **Cancel Functions**

> In Step 2, (highlight a function →)  [Menu] → *Release this* or *Release all* → YES
 - **Reset Private Menu**

> In Step 2,  [Menu] → *Reset menu* → YES



Private Menu Setting Window

Adding Shortcuts

- In Standby,  →  [Private] →  [Set]
-  [Menu] → *Add shortcut icon* → YES

Note

- Alternatively, open Private Menu setting window from **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Display Settings** ► **Private Menu**

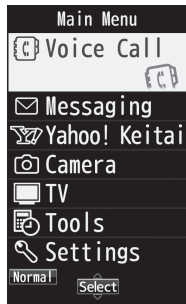
Simple Menu

Activate Simple menu to limit menu options to basic ones.

- Handset is limited to basic operations (☞ P.1-26).



Normal Mode Window



Simple Menu Window

Activating Simple Menu

- 1 In Standby, → [Simple] → YES
- 2 YES or NO
 - Select YES to set all items in Font Size (☞ P.18-6) to *Huge/Large*.
 - To open Simple menu: in Standby.

Deactivate Simple Menu

- > In Standby, → [Normal] → YES

Note

- Turning off the power does not cancel Simple menu.
- Widgets and S! Quick News do not appear in Standby while Simple menu is active. Customized Screen setting is canceled.

Simple Menu

Simple Menu	Page
Voice Call	
Outgoing Log	P.2-13
Incoming Log	P.2-13
Phone Book	P.4-6
Create New Phonebook	P.4-3
Answer Phone	P.2-15
Account Details	P.1-30
Messaging	
Incoming Mail	P.14-17
Create New	P.14-4
Retrieve New	P.14-16
Drafts	P.14-17
Sent Messages	P.14-17
Create New SMS	P.14-8
Yahoo! Keitai	
Yahoo! Keitai	P.15-4
Bookmarks	P.15-9
Saved Pages	P.15-9
Enter URL	P.15-4

Simple Menu	Page
Camera	
Take Pictures	P.6-8
Shoot Videos	P.6-8
See Pictures	P.6-16
Watch Videos	P.6-16
TV	
Watch TV	P.5-5
Timer Recording	P.5-13
Channel Setting	P.5-4
Tools	
Data Folder	P.10-2
Alarms	P.13-6
Calendar	P.13-2
Calculator	P.13-8
Notepad	P.13-8
Receive via Infrared	P.11-2

Simple Menu	Page
Settings	
Ringtones/Volume	P.1-16 P.18-2
Screen/Fonts	P.18-3 to P.18-7
Call Time & Cost	P.18-9
Date & Time	P.18-9
Security	P.12-2 P.13-12 P.19-12
Call Settings	P.2-17 to P.2-21

Using Videos/Music

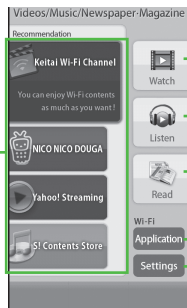
Download videos, music, newspapers or magazines from websites. Play back downloaded files from Videos/Music menu.

- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi service may be required for some content.
- Make sure to check information before using sites.

Main Menu ► Videos/Music

1 Select an item

Follow onscreen instructions.



Open Videos folder
(☞ P.10-13)

Activate Music Player
(☞ P.9-6)

Activate Digital Media Viewer

Access My SoftBank for
Keitai Wi-Fi subscription

Open Wi-Fi setting window
(☞ P.11-11)

Connect to respective sites

Menu Item Update

Confirmation may appear when Videos/Music menu opens. Select **YES** to update. If **NO** is selected, confirmation keeps appearing.

Note

- Alternatively, **Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings ► Videos/Music Updates**


Passwords

Phone Password, Center Access Code and Security Code are needed for handset use.

Phone Password


<Default> 9999

4 to 8-digit number required to use/change some handset functions.

- Enter number within 15 seconds.
- _ appears for each digit entered.
- To change Phone Password:  P.12-2



Center Access Code

4-digit number specified at initial subscription; required to access Voice Mail via landlines or subscribe to fee-based information.


- Do not attempt to change Center Access Code. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information ( P.19-33).

Security Code

4-digit number specified at initial subscription, required to restrict handset services ( P.2-20).

- Enter number within 15 seconds.
- If entered incorrectly three times, Security Code settings lock; Security Code & Center Access Code must be changed. Reach SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information ( P.19-33) for details.
- To change Security Code:  P.2-21

Note

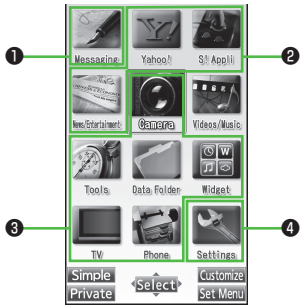
- Write down Phone Password, Center Access Code and Security Code. Do not reveal Phone Password, Center Access Code and Security Code. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.
- For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information ( P.19-33).

Multi Task

Activate up to three functions; one per group from the following four groups.

Group	Function
1 Messaging	Messaging
2 Yahoo! Keitai/S! Appli	Yahoo! Keitai/S! Appli/News/Entertainment
3 Tools	Camera/Tools/Data Folder/TV/Phone/Mobile Widget
4 Settings	Settings

- [▼] appears above the icons of an active group.
- [] appears for single function in use; [] for multiple functions in use.



Note

- Transmission fees apply for calls/packet transmissions while multitasking.

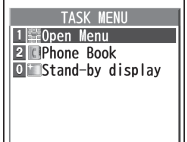
Tip

- Other Functions while Viewing TV (P.5-8)
- Background Music (P.9-7)

Activating Another Function

Activate another function from a different group. Multi Task is unavailable when Simple menu is active.

1 [WiFi] → *Open Menu* →
Select a function



TASK MENU Window

Note

- If another function is selected from same group, confirmation appears. Select **YES** to cancel current function and start a new function.

Ending Current Functions

1 [Back] → **End All Active Functions**
> [WiFi] → [END] → **YES**

View Blind

Activate View Blind to protect Display from prying eyes.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Display Settings ► View Blind

1 *ON*

2 Select a level

- Set level 1-3 (Level 3 is the highest level).

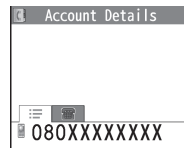
Note

- Alternatively, press and hold **(8)** to activate/cancel. Previously selected level applies.
- View Blind is not activated/deactivated when: In Standby; S! Appli is active; Privacy Key Lock is active; All Rest is in progress; or phone number is being entered.

My Number

Confirm handset phone number in Account Details (☞ P.4-12). Also confirm data saved in Account Details: name, mail address, etc.

- 1 In Standby, **(0)** → **(0)**
Account Details appears.



Viewer Position

Touch Panel Operations

Use Touch Pen to operate Touch Panel in Viewer Position.

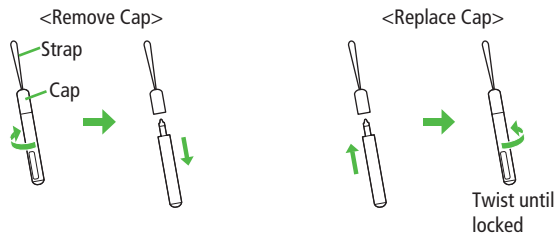
- Touch Panel Operations are unavailable in Normal Position.

Notes

- Do not press Touch Panel with excessive force or use sharp objects (e.g. fingernails, ballpoint pens, pins); Touch Panel may be damaged.
- Touch Panel may not operate with objects on Display.
- Remove protective sheet from Display before use. Do not affix sticker on Display.

Touch Pen

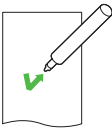
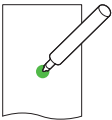
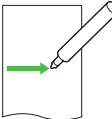
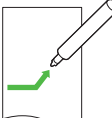
Remove cap and touch Display lightly with the tip of pen. Replace cap after use.



- Remove cap when attaching strap to handset.

Basic Operations

Use Touch Pen for Touch Panel Operations.

Operation	Function
Tap Lightly touch Display 	Select items/execute functions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Touch an item or Control Key.
Hold Touch and hold Display 	Move cursor/highlighted items <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Touch and hold an item.
	Continuous operation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Touch and hold Control Key for fast-forward, etc.
Scroll Slide up, down, left or right across Display 	Scroll screen <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Scroll a list.
	Show previous/next items <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Show previous/next item or page.
Swipe Swipe up, down, left or right across Display and release 	Scroll screen <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Some screens continue scrolling. Touch Display to stop while scrolling.
	Show previous/next items <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Show previous/next item or page.

Control Key and Slide Lever

- In Viewer Position, use Control Keys and Slide Levers for operations.
- Use Slide Lever to adjust volume/zoom. During video playback, use Slide Lever to change playback position.



Note

- Control Key/Slide Lever may not appear for some functions. Tap Display to show/hide Control Key or Slide Lever as needed.
- Appearance/position of Control Keys and Slide Levers vary by function/content.

Ending Functions

Press to end function in Viewer Position.

Note

- Pressing does not end function while Camera is active.

Touch Panel Operation Guide (Japanese)

View operation guide for Viewer Position.

- Available when handset language (言語設定) is set to 日本語 (👉 P.18-4).

- 1 tab → タッチガイド → Tap an item
 - Tap **OK** when confirmation appears. Tap **OK** (以後確認しない) to hide confirmation.

Calibrating Touch Panel

Calibrate Touch Panel to improve response.

- Start from Normal Position.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings

1 Touch Panel Adjustment

Switch to Viewer Position for the following operations.

2 Tap the center of +

Repeat step 2.

- Check performance after calibration. Tap **Retry** for further calibration.

Display Lock

Lock Display to disable Touch Panel Operations.

Display Lock Automatically Activates When:




Display enters Power Saver Mode.

Return handset to Normal Position to deactivate Display Lock.




Setting Display Lock

- 1 In Viewer Position,  (/)






Display turns off and Display Lock activates.

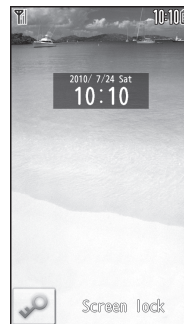
- Press and hold  (/) when a function window is open.

Note

- Pressing and holding  (/) does not activate Display Lock while Camera is active.
- Operations may be terminated when Display Lock is set during data transmission/copy, etc.

Canceling Display Lock

- 1 In Viewer Position,  (/)
Display turns on.
- 2 Slide  to the right
 - Slide to  within 10 seconds.





Touch Panel Menus

The following menus are available in Viewer Position.

① Standby (Viewer Position)

Widgets and shortcuts set in Standby (Normal Position) appear; tap a widget or shortcut to access that function.


- Tap  tab to return to Standby.
- Tap  to hide widgets/shortcuts. Tap Display to show widgets/shortcuts again.



② Shortcuts Menu

Tap  tab.

Save up to 27 shortcuts. Tap a shortcut to access that function.


- To save shortcuts:  P.1-35
- Scroll bar appears when ten or more shortcuts are saved.



③ Main Menu (Viewer Position)

Tap  tab.

Tap an icon to access corresponding function.

- Icons cannot be added/deleted.
- For description of Main Menu items:  P.1-36



Customizing Shortcuts Menu

1  tab → 

2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Add	Add a shortcut > Tap function to save* → OK
Delete	Delete a shortcut > Tap a shortcut → YES → OK ● Alternatively, tap one or more shortcuts then Delete .
Change	Change shortcut > Tap a shortcut → Tap function to save* → OK ● Alternatively, tap a shortcut then Change .
BG image	Set a background image > Tap a folder → Tap an image → Set

* When **Store folder** appears at lower left-hand corner, tap a function to add or tap **Store folder** to return to previous menu.

Rearrange Shortcuts

> After Step 1, touch and hold a shortcut → Slide to targeted location

Note

- The entire image may not appear as background image, depending on image size.

Main Menu (Viewer Position)

Menu Item	Page
Messaging	
Incoming	P.14-17
Create New	P.14-4
Retrieve	P.14-16
Drafts	P.14-17
Templates	P.14-6
Sent/Unsent	P.14-17
Server Mail	P.14-15
New PC Msg.	P.14-26
New SMS	P.14-8
Handwriting	P.3-11
Settings	P.14-4 P.18-20
Memory Stat	P.14-3

Menu Item	Page
Yahoo!	
Yahoo!	P.15-4
Menu List	P.15-4
Bookmarks	P.15-9
Saved Pages	P.15-9
Web Search	P.15-4
Enter URL	P.15-4
History	P.15-5
PC Site Brw	P.15-5
Direct Brw	P.15-5
Settings	P.18-23
Reset	P.18-24
S! Appli	
Download S! Appli	P.16-2
News/Ent.	
S! News	P.8-5
S! Info Ch.	P.8-2
Camera	
Digicam	P.6-7
Pict. Album	P.10-24
Videos	
—	P.1-27

Menu Item	Page
TV	
Watch TV	P.5-5
Video	P.5-12
Data Folder	
Pict. Album	P.10-24
Videos	P.10-13
PC Movies	P.10-13
Widget	
Store	P.7-2
Contents	P.7-3
Settings	P.7-4 P.18-18
Touch Guide	
—	P.1-32
Calculator	
—	P.13-8
Handwriting	
Photo/Memo	P.3-11
Diary	P.3-13

Making/Answering Voice Calls2-2

Making Voice Calls	2-2
Outgoing Call Functions	2-3
Emergency Calls (110, 119, 118)	2-4
Answering Voice Calls	2-5
Incoming Call Functions	2-5
Making Voice Clear (Shikkari Talk)	2-5

Making/Answering Video Calls2-6

Note	2-6
Video Call Window	2-6
Making Video Calls	2-7
Answering Video Calls	2-8

International Calls2-9

Calling Abroad from Japan	2-9
Calling while Abroad	2-9
Global Roaming Settings	2-10

Engaged Call Functions2-11

Operations Available during a Voice Call	2-11
Operations Available during a Video Call	2-12

Call Log2-13

Viewing Call Logs	2-13
Calling from Call Log	2-14
Call Log Operations	2-14

Answer Phone2-15

Using Answer Phone	2-15
Recording Calls/Playing Recordings	2-16
Additional Settings	2-16

Optional Services2-17

Overview	2-17
Call Forwarding	2-17
Voice Mail	2-18
Call Waiting	2-20
Call Barring	2-20
Caller ID	2-21

Making/Answering Voice Calls

Making Voice Calls

Before Calling


- Confirm signal strength (👉 P.1-10)
- If any of these indicators appear:
OUT 📶 📶 📶 📶 📶
→ Calls cannot be made (👉 P.1-10, P.1-11, P.19-12)

1 Enter a phone number

- Include area code for all numbers.

080XXXXXXXXX


2 Confirm the number, then

- To adjust volume: 

3 to end call

Call Time appears.

Correcting Misentries

Use  to place cursor at digit to delete, then .

Press and hold  to delete the digit and all digits to the right of cursor.

Note

- Do not cover antenna area (👉 P.1-7) with hand or sticker; may weaken signal strength and cause calls/transmissions to be unavailable.
- Calls cannot be made in Viewer Position except when Earphone Microphone is connected.

Tip

- Operations Available during a Voice Call (👉 P.2-11)
 - Calling from Call Log (👉 P.2-14)
 - Saving Entered Numbers to Phone Book (👉 P.4-5)
 - Making Calls from Phone Book (👉 P.4-6)
- #### Settings
- Call Time & Call Cost (👉 P.18-9)
 - Set Handset Response when Closed during Call (👉 P.18-10)

Outgoing Call Functions

Showing/Hiding Caller ID

- > Enter number → [Menu] → **Notify caller ID** → OFF or ON
- To cancel setting: [Menu] → **Notify caller ID** → **Cancel prefix**
- Setting Caller ID on/off (Caller ID: P.2-21)

Adding Prefix to Phone Number

■ Save Prefix

- > **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Call Settings** ► **Prefix**
 - Highlight **<Not Recorded>** ► [Edit] ► Enter a name
 - Enter a prefix number
- Up to seven entries can be saved.
- To check entries: Select a saved prefix.
- To delete entries: Highlight a prefix → [Menu] → **Delete this** or **Delete all** (→ For **Delete all**, enter Phone Password) → YES

■ Make Calls Using Prefix

- > Enter number → [Menu] → **Prefix numbers** → Select an entry → Voice Calls: / Video Calls: [V. Call]
 - Alternatively, in detail window of Phone Book, Redial, Outgoing Call Logs or Incoming Call Logs, [Menu] → **Prefix numbers** → Select an entry → Voice Calls: / Video Calls: [V. Call]
- Example: Save "186" and "184" as prefixes, and add them to phone numbers to show/hide your caller ID when making calls.

Sending Touch-tone Signals

Send touch-tone signals for services such as reserving tickets, checking bank balance, etc. Save number strings to be sent as a touch-tone signal. Use P (pause) to separate numbers when saving.

■ Save Pause Dial

- > **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Phone Settings** ► **Pause Dial**
 - [Edit] → Enter a number string
- To enter a pause (p): Press and hold
- To delete: In Pause Dial window, [Menu] → **Delete** → YES

■ Send Pause Dial

- > **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Phone Settings** ► **Pause Dial**
 - [Send] ► Enter a phone number ► ► Once line is connected, press [Send]
- Number string is sent each time [Send] is pressed.
- To send all number strings at one time: Once line is connected, press and hold → **Send at one time**

Emergency Calls (110, 119, 118)

Call 110 (Police), 119 (Fire & Ambulance) or 118 (Coast Guard) even when some handset restrictions are active.

Calls Cannot be Made in Following Cases:

- When **Set Max Cost Limit** is **ON** and charge limit is reached
- In PIN/PIN2, PUK/PUK2 entry window

Emergency Positioning Request

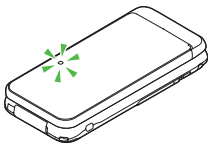
When an emergency call is made from a mobile phone, location is reported to first response agencies such as the police.

- Location information may be inaccurate due to location or signal conditions. Describe location or nearby landmarks.
- Base Station Positioning System is accurate within 100 meters to 10 kilometers. Location information from distant base stations may be inaccurate.
- Function available where first response agencies have completed system installation.
- Dialing 184 before 110, 119 or 118, cancels location report. However, first responders may obtain location information for immediate and serious threats to life.
- Not available for international roaming.
- Requires no separate subscription or transmission fees.

Answering Voice Calls

When a Call Arrives...

Handset rings; Notification Light flashes.



If Caller ID is sent, number appears in Display; if saved in Phone Book, caller's name appears.

When an International call arrives,  appears at upper left of caller's phone number.

1 to talk



- To adjust volume: 

2 to end call

Call Time appears.

Adjust Ringer Volume




> While handset is ringing, 

- Volume adjustment is disabled in following cases:
 - When Manner Mode is active ( P.1-17)
 - While Ringer Volume is set to **Escalating Tone** ( P.18-2)

Note







- When Caller ID is not sent, **Withheld** appears.
- Calls cannot be received in Viewer Position except when Earphone Microphone is connected.

Tip

- Operations Available during a Voice Call ( P.2-11)
- Rejecting Unknown Callers ● Rejecting Calls without Caller ID ( P.12-13)
- Settings** ● Change Answer Setting ● Answer Calls by Opening Handset ( P.18-8)

Incoming Call Functions

Following operations are available for incoming calls.

Place Call on Hold	> 
Answer Phone	> 
Call Rejection	>  [Menu] → Call Rejection <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Rejecting Unknown Callers/Rejecting Calls without Caller ID ( P.12-13)
Call Forwarding	>  [Menu] → Call Forwarding <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Activate Call Forwarding ( P.2-17) beforehand to forward incoming calls to a preset number. If Call Forwarding is not active, call is rejected.

Making Voice Clear (Shikkari Talk)

<Default> ON

Shikkari Talk adjusts earpiece sound according to surrounding noise.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call Settings ▶ Shikkari Talk

1 ON or OFF

Making/Answering Video Calls

Exchange video/sound with video call-compatible mobiles.

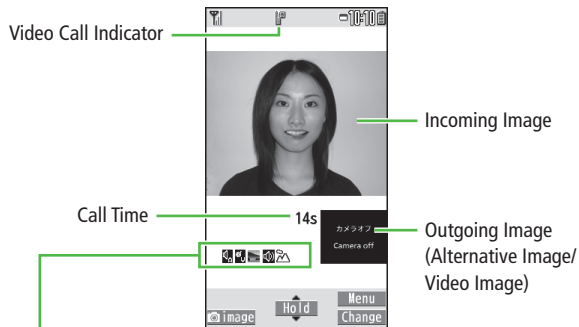
- Send Alternative Image (still image) or Video Image via Camera. By default, Outgoing Image is set to Alternative Image.

Note

- Only available within 3G network coverage.
- 942P is 3G-324M compliant; calls connected via different systems may be disconnected (charges apply).
- Increasing Speaker volume may cause interference. Decrease volume or use Earphone Microphone.
- Handset may become warm during Video Call. This is not malfunction.
- When incoming/outgoing sound or image fails, try calling again.
- When handset is warm, switching to Video Image may be disabled or Video Image may switch to Alternative Image.

Video Call Window

Example: Outgoing Video Call by Default



Indicators

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| : Incoming/Outgoing Sound OK | : Speaker ON |
| (Gray): Incoming/Outgoing Sound NA | : AV output |
| : Incoming/Outgoing Image OK | : During Bluetooth® handsfree call |
| (Gray): Incoming/Outgoing Image NA | : Close-up |
| : Video ON | : Landscape |
| : Alternative Image ON | : Night mode |

- Display appearance may vary by settings/conditions.

Making Video Calls

Before Calling

- Confirm signal strength (☞ P.1-10)
- If any of these indicators appear:

OUT     


→ Video Calls cannot be made (☞ P.1-10, P.1-11, P.19-12)

1 Enter a phone number

080XXXXXXXXX

2 Confirm the number, then [V. Call]

When answered, outgoing and incoming images appear; other party's voice sounds via Speaker.

- To adjust volume: 

3 to end call

Note

- Other party's voice sounds via Earpiece in Manner Mode; activate Speaker (☞ P.2-12).

Tip


- Outgoing Call Functions (☞ P.2-3)
 - Operations Available during a Video Call (☞ P.2-12)
 - Calling from Call Log (☞ P.2-14)
 - Other Ways to Add New Entries (☞ P.4-5)
 - Making Calls from Phone Book (☞ P.4-6)
- Settings**
- Outgoing Image
 - Switch to Voice Call when Video Call Fails (☞ P.18-12)

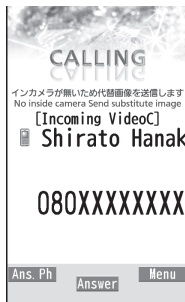
Answering Video Calls

When a Video Call Arrives...

Handset rings; Notification Light flashes.

If Caller ID is sent, number appears in Display; if saved in Phone Book, caller's name appears.

When an International call arrives,  appears at upper left of caller's phone number.

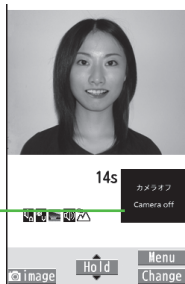


1 

Alternative Image is sent.


- To send Video Image:

 [image]



2  to end call

Note

- Other party's voice sounds via Earpiece in Manner Mode; activate Speaker ( P.2-12).


Tip

- Adjust Ringer Volume ● Incoming Call Functions ( P.2-5)
- Operations Available during a Video Call ( P.2-12)

International Calls

Calling Abroad from Japan

- Application not required. For details, go to:
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/call/

- 1 Enter a phone number
- 2  [Menu] → *Int'l dial assist*
Country/region code list appears.

- 3 Select a country/region





4 Voice Calls



Video Calls



■ Enter Country/Region Code Directly

- >  → Press and hold  to display + (IDD Prefix) → Enter a country/region code → Enter a number (omit first 0)
→ Voice Calls:  / Video Calls:  [V. Call]
- Do not omit leading 0 to call Italy (country code: 39).


Calling while Abroad

- May require application to Global Roaming Service. For details, go to:
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/global_roaming/

Example: When Roaming Dial Assistant is ON

- Roaming Dial Assistant ( P.2-10) is set to **ON** and **Japan** by default.

1 Voice Calls

Enter a phone number → 

Video Calls

Enter a phone number →  [V. Call]

- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Call to Japan*	Call Japan
Call to set code*	Call a country/region set for <i>Roaming Dial Assistant</i>
As is Call	Manually enter number to call Select when calling within the country/region

* First 0 is replaced by IDD Prefix and country/region code (e.g. +81). (When calling Italy, +39 is added before first 0.)

- Confirmation window appears for the first time. Select **NO** to set Roaming Dial Assistant to **OFF**.

Note

- IDD Prefix and country/region code can be manually entered in Step 1. Alternatively, save IDD Prefix and country/region code in Phone Book entries.

Global Roaming Settings

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► International Call

International Call Settings

> **Int'l Dial Assist** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Roaming Dial Assistant	Automatically inserts prefixes (IDD Prefix and country code) > ON or OFF (→ For ON , select a country/region)
Country/Area Code	Save up to 27 country/region codes > Highlight <Not Recorded> → [Edit] → Enter a country/region name → Enter a country/region code ● To view an entry: Select a saved country/region ● To delete: Highlight a country/region → [Menu] → Delete this or Delete all (→ For Delete all , enter Phone Password) → YES
IDD Prefix	Edit IDD Prefix. IDD Prefix is set to 0046010 by default > [Menu] → Edit → Edit IDD Prefix

Network Mode

<Default> Automatically

> **Select Network** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Automatically	Handset automatically selects 3G network in Japan, and available network (3G or GSM) when abroad.
Manually	> Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · 3G/GSM: 3G/GSM service area in Japan or abroad. Handset selects an available network automatically. · 3G: 3G service area in Japan or abroad. · GSM: GSM service area abroad. Unavailable in Japan.

● **Automatically** is recommended.

Select Operator

<Default> Auto

> **Select Operator** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Auto	Select an operator automatically
Manual	Select an operator manually > Select an operator <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Operators with X are not available. ● To show operator list: [Update]
Network Re-search	Search available networks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When Auto is set, handset selects an available operator automatically. When Manual is set, operator list appears.

■ Operator Priority for Automatic Search

> **PLMN Setting** → [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Add your network	Save currently connected operator > [Finish] → YES
Add from list	> Select an operator → [Set] → Select a network type → [Finish] → YES ● To search operators by country/region: [Search] → Select a country/region (To search again in country/region list: [Search] → Enter a country/region name)
Direct input	Save unlisted operators by entering country/region code and operator code > Enter country/region code (3 digits) and operator code (2 to 3 digits) → Select a network type → [Finish] → YES
Change priority	> Select a priority → [Finish] → YES
Delete this/ Delete all	> YES → [Finish] → YES

■ View Operator Name in Standby

<Default> OFF

> **Operator Name** → ON or OFF















- When **ON** is set, Clock Position is set to **Pattern 1** (P.18-5).







Engaged Call Functions

Operations Available during a Voice Call

Adjust Volume	> ● Adjust volume within two seconds. ● Adjusted volume is retained even after calls end or handset is turned off.
Place Call on Hold	> [Hold] ● To resume call:
Speaker ON/OFF	Toggle Speaker or Earpiece ●
Record Conversation	Record for about three minutes per call > [Rec] ● To end recording: [Stop]/ ● To play back recorded data: P.2-16
Toggle Manner Mode	> Press and hold #
Toggle Handset/ Bluetooth®	Toggle handset or Bluetooth® device > Press and hold

Operations Available during a Video Call

Adjust Volume	<p>> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Adjust volume within two seconds. ● Adjusted volume is retained even after calls end or handset is turned off.
Place Call on Hold	<p>>  [Hold]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To resume call: 
Speaker ON/OFF	<p>Toggle Speaker or Earpiece</p> <p>> </p>
Record Conversation	<p>Record up to five calls for about 20 seconds each</p> <p>>  [Menu] → V. Call recording</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To end recording:  [Stop] ● To play back recorded data:  P.2-16
Video/ Alternative Image	<p>Toggle Video Image and Alternative Image</p> <p>>  [image]/[Subst.]</p>
Toggle Image Sizes	<p>>  [Change]</p>
Zoom	<p>Adjust zoom level for Video Image to be sent</p> <p>>  (zoom in) or  (zoom out)</p>
Use Photo Light	<p>Illuminate Photo Light while sending Video Image</p> <p>>  [Menu] → Photo light → ON or OFF</p>
Toggle Manner Mode	<p>> Press and hold </p>
Toggle Handset/ Bluetooth®	<p>Toggle handset or Bluetooth® device</p> <p>>  [Menu] → Talk on BT/Phone → Bluetooth or Phone</p>

Backlight Setting	<p>>  [Menu] → Back light → Constant light or 15 seconds light</p>
Video Call Setting	<p>>  [Menu] → V. Call settings → Follow the steps for selected item ( P.18-13)</p>
LCD AI	<p>Activate/deactivate auto image compensation</p> <p>>  [Menu] → LCD AI → ON or OFF</p>
Account Details	<p>>  [Menu] → Account details</p>
Key Guide	<p>>  [Menu] → Key guide</p>

Call Log

Incoming and outgoing call records appear here. Use these records to call back.

Redial	Up to 30 outgoing call records (Voice and Video) are saved. Older records of same number are deleted.
Outgoing Call Logs	Up to 30 outgoing call records (Voice and Video) and up to 30 outgoing transmission records (64K data and packet transmission) are saved. Older records of same number are also retained.
Incoming Call Logs	Up to 30 incoming call records (Voice and Video) and up to 30 incoming transmission records (64K data transmission) are saved. Older records of same number are also retained.

Indicators for Redial/Outgoing Call Logs/Incoming Call Logs

Dialed/received Voice Calls	Dialed calls of 64K data transmission
* Missed Voice Calls	Received calls of 64K data transmission
Dialed/received Video Calls	* Missed calls of 64K data transmission
* Missed Video Calls	Dialed calls of packet transmission
New messages recorded on Answer Phone	Received calls of 64K data/packet transmission when no external device is connected
Dialed/received international Voice Calls	
* Missed international Voice Calls	
Dialed/received international Video Calls	
* Missed international Video Calls	
* Calls received while handset is off, out-of-range, engaged, etc. (☞ P.2-19)	

* Unchecked calls are highlighted.

Viewing Call Logs

1 Redial



Outgoing Call Logs



→ Phone → Call Log →

Outgoing Call Logs

Incoming Call Logs



Records appear.

- To show Received/Sent address logs:



	Redial
1	7/24 10:24 PHONE
	Aoki Taro
2	7/24 10:20 PHONE
	Suzuki Goro
3	7/24 10:10 PHONE
	Shirato Hanako

V. Call | Select | Menu
Change

Redial

■ View Missed Calls

> Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Call Log ▶ Incoming Call Logs

▶ Missed Calls

- **Unknown Calls** appears in Call Log for unchecked calls.

Note

- Newest record appears at top of list. Names appear if saved in Phone Book.
- Call Log records remain even if handset is turned off.
- When the maximum number of records are saved, oldest is deleted first.
- Alternatively, view Incoming Call Logs from **Main Menu**
▶ Phone ▶ Call Log ▶ Incoming Call Logs ▶ All Calls


Calling from Call Log

1 Open Call Logs (☞ P.2-13)

2 Voice Calls

Highlight a phone number or name → 

Video Calls

Highlight a phone number or name →  [V. Call]

International Calls

Select a phone number or name →  [Menu] →



Int'l dial assist → Select a country/region →

Voice Calls: /Video Calls:  [V. Call]

Call Log Operations

Highlight a call record and press  [Menu].

- Available functions vary by selected log/record.

Item	Operation/Description
Notify caller ID	Notify or withhold your Caller ID (☞ P.2-3)
Prefix numbers	Add a prefix to phone number before dialing > Select an entry → 
Int'l dial assist	Add international dialing prefix > Select a country/region → 
Character size	Toggle font sizes
Add to Phone Book	Save number to Phone Book (☞ P.4-5)
Ring time¹	Show ring time (missed calls)
Add shortcut icon	Create a shortcut (☞ P.1-21)
Compose message	Create a message (☞ From Step 4 on P.14-5)
Compose SMS²	Create SMS (☞ From Step 4 on P.14-8)
Received address/Sent address	Show Received/Sent address log
Delete this/ Delete selected/ Delete all	> Delete record(s) in selected list

¹ Available only for Incoming Call Logs

² Message can be sent to SoftBank handsets only

Answer Phone

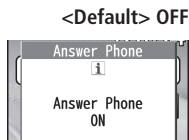
Using Answer Phone

Record up to five voice messages or up to two video messages (up to 20 seconds per message) on handset.

- When Answer Phone is active, - (Voice Call) or - (Video Call) appears in Standby (Voice Calls are prioritized).
- Unavailable when: handset is off or in Offline Mode; OOT appears. Use Voice Mail (P.2-18).
- Change outgoing message and ring time: P.2-16

Activating/Canceling Answer Phone

- 1 Press and hold
 - To toggle settings, repeat operation.



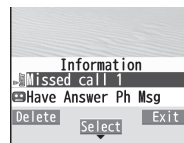
- **Redirect a Call to Answer Phone**
- > [Ans. Ph]

Note

- Alternatively, activate/cancel from **Main Menu** ► **Tools** ► **Sound Recorders** ► **Answer Phone Setting** ► **ON** or **OFF**
- When full, new messages cannot be recorded even if Answer Phone is activated. Delete old messages (Below, P.2-16).
- While Manner Mode (set for User Mode) is active, Answer Phone setting for User Mode (P.18-7) is prioritized.

Playing Messages from Information Window

When a new message is recorded, Information window (P.1-20) opens in Standby.



- 1 Select an item
- 2 Select a message
Playback starts.
After playback ends, Information window disappears.




Note

- Alternatively, press in Standby (for Voice Call messages) or **Main Menu** ► **Tools** ► **Sound Recorders** ► **Voice Call Data** or **Video Call Data** ► Select a recording
- To delete a message during playback, press [Erase] → **YES**.

Recording Calls/Playing Recordings

- Record one Voice Call (up to three minutes).
- Record up to five Video Calls (up to 20 seconds per message).

Recording Voice Calls

- 1 During a call,  [Rec]
Recording starts.
- 2 To end recording,  [Stop] or 

Recording Video Calls

- 1 During a call,  [Menu] → *V. Call recording*
Recording starts.
- 2 To end recording,  [Stop]

Playing Recordings (Call Data)

Main Menu ► Tools ► Sound Recorders

- 1 **Voice Calls**
Voice Call Data → *Call Data*
- Video Calls**
Video Call Data → Select a recording
Playback starts.


Additional Settings

From ► Main Menu ► Tools ► Sound Recorders

Select Outgoing Message/Set Ring Time

- > *Answer Phone Setting* → *ON* → Select an outgoing message → Enter ring time
- When Answer Phone and an Optional Service (Voice Mail or Call Forwarding) are both active, function with shorter ring time takes priority. For example, if Answer Phone ring time is 18 seconds and Optional Service is 20 seconds, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change due to signal conditions.)
- Regardless of priority setting, Call Forwarding or Voice Mail takes priority when Answer Phone has reached maximum number of messages.

Delete Messages/Recordings

- > *Voice Call Data* or *Video Call Data* → (Highlight a recording →  [Menu] → *Erase this, Erase rec. msg., Erase Call Data** or *Erase all* → *YES*

* *Video Call Data* only

Optional Services

Overview

- For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Call Forwarding (☞ Right)	Forward unanswerable calls to a preset number when handset is off, out-of-range, etc.
Voice Mail (☞ P.2-18)	Unanswered calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Center as set or when handset is off, out-of-range, engaged, etc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Missed Call Notification (☞ P.2-19)
Call Waiting* (☞ P.2-20)	Place the current call on hold and answer a second, or alternate between calls.
Call Barring (☞ P.2-20)	Restrict incoming/outgoing Voice Calls/Video Calls and SMS messages.
Caller ID (☞ P.2-21)	Show or hide your number when calling.


* Separate subscription required.

Call Forwarding

- Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously.
- When forwarding Video Calls, set a destination phone that supports 3G-324M standard video calls. If not, Video Calls are not forwarded.

Activating Call Forwarding

Main Menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings**
▶ **Voice Mail/Call Fwding** ▶ **Call Forwarding ON**

- Select a type
- Enter a destination phone number
 -  to select number from Phone Book.
- Select an item (See below)



Item	Operation/Description
Ringer ON	Forward missed calls > Select a ring time → YES
Ringer OFF	Forward all calls without ringing/vibrating > YES

■ **Check Call Forwarding Status**
> **Main Menu** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings**
▶ **Voice Mail/Call Fwding** ▶ **Get Status**

■ Cancel Call Forwarding

- > **Main Menu** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings**
 ▶ **Voice Mail/Call Fwding** ▶ **Deactivate All** ▶ **YES**

Note

- Toll free numbers and international call numbers cannot be saved as a destination number.
- When using Call Forwarding together with Answer Phone, the function with shorter ring time takes priority (Priority may change due to signal condition).
- When **Ringer ON** is set, following operations are available while handset is ringing (within ring time):
 - To answer call: 
 - To forward call:  [Menu] → **Call Forwarding**

Voice Mail

- Calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Center via Call Forwarding function; Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously.
- Voice Mail is not available for Video Calls.

Activating Voice Mail

- Main Menu** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings**
 ▶ **Voice Mail/Call Fwding** ▶ **Voice Mail ON**

- 1 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Ringer ON	Forward missed calls > Select a ring time → YES
Ringer OFF	Forward all calls without ringing/vibrating > YES



■ Check Voice Mail Status

- > **Main Menu** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings**
 ▶ **Voice Mail/Call Fwding** ▶ **Get Status**

■ Cancel Voice Mail

- > **Main Menu** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings**
 ▶ **Voice Mail/Call Fwding** ▶ **Deactivate All** ▶ **YES**


Note

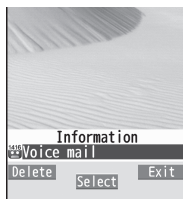
- When using Voice Mail together with Answer Phone, the function with shorter ring time takes priority (Priority may change due to signal condition).
- When **Ringer ON** is set, following operations are available while handset is ringing (within ring time):
 - To answer call: 
 - To forward call:  [Menu] → **Call Forwarding**

Checking Voice Mail Messages

Information window ( P.1-20) and  appear in Standby when new messages are recorded.

1 Select an item → **YES**

Follow voice guidance.
Information window and  disappear after messages are checked.



■ View Details

View callers' phone numbers and date/time Voice Mail messages were left before playing messages.

- Activate Missed Call Notification beforehand ( Right).
- >  → **Voice Mail Notif.** →  [

■ Delete Indicator

- > **Main Menu** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings**
▶ **Voice Mail/Call Fwding** ▶ **Delete Voice Mail Icon** ▶ **YES**

Note

- Alternatively, check Voice Mail:
Main Menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings**
▶ **Voice Mail/Call Fwding** ▶ **Listen to Voice Mail** ▶ **YES**

Missed Call Notification

When Missed Call Notification function is active, Information window appears for calls missed while handset was off, out-of range, engaged etc.

- Available only when Voice Mail is active.


- Main Menu** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings**
▶ **Missed Call Notifi.**

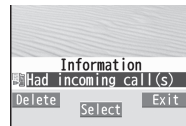
1 **YES**

Handset connects to the Network.
Follow voice guidance.

When Calls are Received while Missed Call Notification is Active...

Information window appears for missed calls when handset is turned on or comes into range.
Select information to view Missed Calls.

- **Had incoming call(s)** appears when Voice Mail messages are recorded ( Left).



Call Waiting

Activating/Canceling Call Waiting

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Call Waiting

1 **Activate** or **Deactivate** → YES




Current status appears.

■ Check Call Waiting Status

> Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Call Waiting
► Get Status

Answering Second Call

1 When tone sounds,

- Press  to alternate between calls.
- Press  to disconnect active call.
- When the party hangs up, active call ends.
- Press  to re-engage the party on hold.
- When a second call comes in while first call is on hold, hold status is canceled and first call resumes.


■ Reject Second Call

> When tone sounds,  [Menu] → Call Rejection

Note

- When Voice Mail or Call Forwarding is set to **Ringer ON** while Call Waiting is active, unanswered calls are transferred to Voice Mail Center or the forwarding number.
- When Voice Mail or Call Forwarding is set to **Ringer OFF**, Call Waiting is disabled.

Call Barring

- **Bar All Outgoing** and **Bar All Incoming** are not available when Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is active (Call Forwarding or Voice Mail takes priority).
- Security Code is required ( P.1-28).

Activating/Deactivating Call Barring

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Call Barring

1 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Bar All Outgoing	Restrict all non-emergency calls
Bar All Int'l	Allow only domestic calls
Bar Int'l	Restrict all international calls except to Japan
Bar All Incoming	Reject all calls
Bar All Roaming	Reject calls when outside Japan

2 **Activate** or **Deactivate** → **YES**

3 Enter Security Code

■ **Check Call Barring Status**

> After Step 1, **Get Status**

■ **Cancel All Call Barring**

> In Step 1, **Cancel All Barring** → Enter Security Code

■ **Change Security Code**

> In Step 1, **Set Security Code** → Enter current Security Code → Enter new Security Code → Reenter Security Code

Note

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) are dialable even while Call Barring for outgoing calls is active.
- If call is attempted when Call Barring is active, warning message appears. It may take longer to appear in some areas. Check Call Barring settings if the message does not appear.

Caller ID

<Default> Network Set

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings

► Show My Number ► Activate

1 **ON, OFF** or **Network Set**

- **Network Set** Caller ID setting varies by subscription.

■ **Check Caller ID Status**

> Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Show My Number
► Check Setting

Note

- Alternatively, enter these numbers/symbols before the phone number to show or hide Caller ID:

Show: (1) (8) (6) or (*) (3) (1) (#)


Hide: (1) (8) (4) or (#) (3) (1) (#)

Text Entry/Handwriting

Text Entry	3-2
Text Entry Window	3-2
Entering Text	3-3
Entering Characters	3-3
Pictographs/Symbols/Smileys/URL	3-4
Templates	3-5
Additional Features	3-5
Conversion Methods (Japanese)	3-6
Predictive Conversion	3-6
Converting Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics.....	3-8
Editing Text	3-8
Deleting & Replacing.....	3-8
Copy/Cut/Paste	3-9
User's Dictionary	3-9
Saving User's Dictionary Entries	3-9
Download Dictionary	3-10
Activating Downloaded Dictionaries.....	3-10
Text Entry in Touch Panel	3-10
Text Entry Window	3-10
Handwriting Functions	3-11
Handwriting Photo/Memo	3-11
Handwriting Diary	3-13

Text Entry

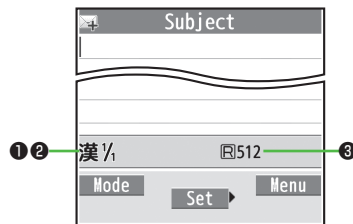
Enter alphanumerics, hiragana, kanji, katakana, symbols and pictographs.






- Two types of character input methods are available: 5-touch and 2-touch. In this guide, examples are described in 5-touch.
- Lists of Key Assignments:  P.19-15, P.19-16

2-touch

Press two numeric keys to enter a character.

Text Entry Window



① Character Input Methods		Operations
5-touch/2-touch		Press and hold  [Mode]
② Input Modes (Double-byte/Single-byte)		Operations
5-touch	漢 ¹ / ₁ : Kanji (hiragana) (double-byte) か ¹ / ₁ / か ¹ / ₂ : Katakana 英 ¹ / ₁ / 英 ¹ / ₂ : Upper case alphanumerics abc ¹ / ₁ Sm / abc ¹ / ₂ Sm: Lower case alphanumerics 数 ¹ / ₁ / 数 ¹ / ₂ : Numbers	 [Mode] → Select a character type
2-touch	2 ¹ / ₁ / 2 ¹ / ₂ : Upper case alphanumerics / Regular kana 2 ¹ / ₁ Sm / 2 ¹ / ₂ Sm: Lower case alphanumerics / Small kana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To toggle double-/single-byte:  [Mode] To toggle Small kana/Regular kana:  
③ Remaining Bytes		

Entering Text

Entering Characters

Example: Enter 鈴木

1 In alphanumeric mode,

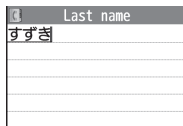
[Mode] → 漢字

す: three times

ず: * → three times →

き: twice

* When the next character is on the same key, press first to move cursor.



2 to enter Suggestion List

- To exit List, press .

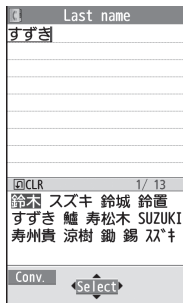
- Available suggestion lists:

Predictive Candidates

Conversion Candidates

Context Forecast

abc/123/Kana Candidates ()



3 to select 鈴木

Other Input Functions

Enter katakana/ alphanumerics	[Mode] → Select input mode (character type) → Enter characters
Enter small kana (つ, っ, etc.)	Enter a character → to convert to small character ● Alternatively, press a key repeatedly to enter an assigned small kana.
Enter upper case characters	Enter a character → ● Alternatively, press a key repeatedly to enter an assigned upper case character.
Add ° or °	Enter a character to add ° or ° → for ° or twice for ° ● In single-byte katakana mode, ° and ° are entered as a single-byte character.
Insert line feed	[Line FD] to insert line feeds in text
Insert space at end of text	
Insert space within text	repeatedly until single-byte space appears*, or [Menu] → <i>Input Space</i> (Double-byte (single-byte) space is entered in 2 bytes (1 byte) input mode.)
Toggle characters in reverse order	[Rev.] Example: From c, press to toggle as follows: c → b → a → 2...
Move cursor to beginning/ end of sentence	[Menu] → <i>Jump</i> → <i>To beginning</i> or <i>To end</i>
Undo	[Undo]

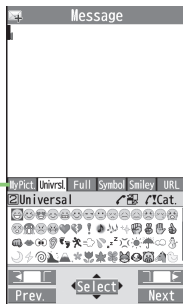
* Space cannot be entered in number mode. Use symbol list.

Pictographs/Symbols/Smileys/URL

- Pictographs do not appear in messages sent to incompatible SoftBank handsets or e-mail addresses.
- Symbol List: P.19-17

- In text entry window, List Log may appear first.

My Pict.¹: My Pictograms tab
Univrsl.²: Universal (cross-carrier) pictographs tab
Full: All pictographs tab
Symbol: Symbols tab
Smiley: Smileys tab
URL: URLs tab



¹ Only in S! Mail text entry window

² Only for S! Mail

- To toggle tabs: [] / []
- to select a pictograph/symbol/smiley/URL

Functions Available in Pictograph/Symbol/Smiley/URL List

Toggle pages within tab	[Prev.] / [Next]
Toggle categories within tab	Press and hold → Select a category <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Alternatively, use numbers (1-9, 0) to toggle categories.
Toggle full screen/standard screen	
Close list	


Note

- Alternatively, [Menu] → *Pictograms/Symbols* → *Pictograms*, *Symbols* or *Smiley*.
- Categories do not switch if no data are entered.

Templates

Insert templates (greetings, URLs, emoticons) or edit preinstalled templates.

Inserting Templates

- 1 In text entry window, press and hold 
 - Not available in number mode.
- 2 Select a category → Select a template

Note

- Alternatively, in a text entry window,  [Menu] → *Templates/Quote* → *Templates* to enter a template

Editing Templates

Main Menu ► **Tools** ► **Templates/Users Dic.** ► **Templates**

- 1 Select a category
- 2 Highlight a template →  [Edit] → Edit template


Reset Edited Templates





- > After Step 1, (highlight a template →)  [Menu] → *Reset this* or *Reset all* (→ For *Reset all*, enter Phone Password) → *YES*

Manage Template Folders

- > In Step 1, highlight a category →  [Menu] → *Edit folder name* → Edit folder name
- To reset folder name,  [Menu] → *Reset name* → *YES*

Additional Features

- 1 In text entry window,  [Menu] → *Templates/Quote*
- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Kuten code	Enter a character code ( P.19-18) > Enter a character code (4 digits)
Quote phone book	Quote Phone Book entry details > Select an entry → Check items →  [Finish]
Quote acct detls	Quote Account Details > Enter Phone Password → Check items →  [Finish]
Bar code reader	Activate Bar Code Reader to insert scanned result ( P.13-15)

Conversion Methods (Japanese)

Predictive Conversion

Predictive/conversion suggestions appear when entering text.

Before Entering Text*	Predictive Candidates (Pre-text Predict)	Suggests salutations/opening words Example: こんにちは, お疲れさま, etc.
While Entering Text	Predictive Candidates	Lists likely conversions and matching conversions Likely Conversions: わ → 私, わたし, etc. Matching Conversions: わ → 和, 輪, etc.
	Conversion Candidates	Suggests only matching conversions Example: わ → 和, 輪, etc.
	abc/123/Kana Candidates	Lists alphanumerics/katakana assigned to key (☞ P.3-8)
After a Word is Fixed	Context Forecast	Suggests words likely to follow Example: 私 is fixed → です, の, は, etc.

* Available when you open Message text entry window or cursor is at top of text entry window. Note that handset Language must be set to **日本語**.

- Predictions change with each letter entered.
- Press ☑ [Pred.]/[Conv.] to toggle Predictive Candidates List and Conversion Candidates List.

Learned Words

- Handset learns entered characters and suggests them for future conversions.
- To delete learned words individually: Highlight a word → Press and hold ☑ → **YES**
- When replying/forwarding a message, use word suggestions based on the original message (☞ P.18-11).

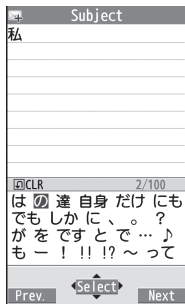
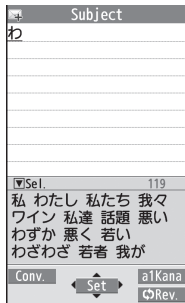
Tip

Settings

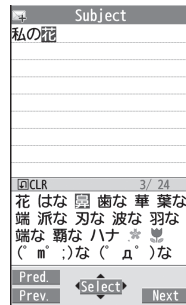
- Reset Learned Words
- Show/Hide Predictive Candidates and Context Forecast
- Fix Entered Characters Automatically
- Pre-text Predict (☞ P.18-11)

Example: Enter 私の鼻

- 1 In kanji (hiragana) mode, わ is entered and Predictive Candidates List appears.
- 2 to move to Suggestion List → to select 私
私 is entered and Context Forecast List appears.
- 3 to move to Suggestion List → to select の
の is entered and Context Forecast List appears.
- 4 →
はな is entered and Predictive Candidates List appears.
- 5 [Conv.]
Conversion Candidates List appears.



- 6 to move to Suggestion List → to select 鼻



If the Word is Not Listed

Press to return to hiragana, and segment hiragana to convert separately.

Example: Segment はるか into はる and か, then convert to 晴香

- ① [Conv.] → → to move to Suggestion List → Select 晴
- ② to move to Suggestion List → Select 香





Using Previously Entered Words

Enter the first one or two hiragana to access previously entered words in the list.

Converting Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumerics







Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) mode. Date and time can be entered quickly.

Example 1: Enter OK

Step	1	2	3	4
Key	 (3 times)	 (twice)	 [a1Kana]	
Display	ふい	ふいに	abc/123/Kana Candidates	OK

- Highlight OK and press .

Example 2: Enter 10/30, 10:30 or 10月30日

Step	1	2	3
Key	   	 [a1Kana]	
Display	あわさわ	abc/123/Kana Candidates	10/30 10:30 or 10月30日

- Highlight a suggestion and press .

Editing Text

Deleting & Replacing

1 Delete Characters within Lines

Place cursor before a character → 

A character after cursor is deleted.

- Press and hold  to delete all characters after cursor.

Delete Characters from the End of Text




Place cursor at the end of text → 

A character before cursor is deleted.

- Press and hold  to delete all characters before cursor.

2 Enter another character

Copy/Cut/Paste



- 1 In text entry window, [Menu] → *Copy* or *Cut*
- 2 **Select Text to Copy/Cut**
Place cursor before (or after) text to select →
[Start] → Place cursor after (or before) text →
[End]
- Select All (In S! Mail Message Text Entry Window Only)**
[All] → [End]
- 3 Place cursor at target location → [Menu] → *Paste*

User's Dictionary

Save frequently used words/phrases (up to 100 entries).
Saved words/phrases appear among word suggestions.

Saving User's Dictionary Entries

Main Menu ► Tools ► Templates/Users Dic.
► User's Dictionary

- 1 <New>
- 2 Enter a word → Enter reading
- **Edit User's Dictionary Entries**
> In Step 1, highlight a word → [Edit] → Edit word → Edit reading
- **Delete User's Dictionary Entries**
> In Step 1, [Menu] → Select an item → Operate selected item

Download Dictionary

Download dictionaries from P-egg, a download site for 942P users (see below). Activate downloaded dictionaries to add character conversions to conversion suggestions (Japanese).

- P-egg (as of June 2010)

Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► Bookmarks
► Panasonic メーカーサイト (P-egg)

Activating Downloaded Dictionaries

Main Menu ► Tools ► Templates/Users Dic.
► Download Dictionary


1 Select a dictionary

- ★ appears for active dictionary.
- To cancel: follow the same step


■ Change Title

> In Step 1, highlight a dictionary →  [Menu] → **Edit title** → Edit

■ View Details

> In Step 1, highlight a dictionary →  [Menu] → **Dictionary info**

■ Delete Dictionaries






> In Step 1, (highlight a dictionary →  [Menu] → **Delete this** or **Delete all** (→ For **Delete all**, enter Phone Password) → **YES**

Text Entry in Touch Panel

Use Touch Panel for text entry in Viewer Position.

Text Entry Window



	Item	Description
①	Input Method/ Input Mode	( P.3-2)
②	Remaining Bytes	Remaining number of enterable byte appears
③	Multi Selector	Move cursor or insert single byte space/line feed
④	Touch Keypad	Same operations as Keypad ( -  ,  , ) in Normal Position. ● Long press key operations (opening Templates list, etc.) are unavailable.


5	Conversion Candidates	Shows Conversion Candidates Show/hide candidates with ▼/▲
6	Input Mode/ Conversion Key	Mode: Toggle Input modes (character types) Touch and hold to toggle input methods Conv./Pred.: Toggle Conversion/Predictive Candidates
7	Control Key	Shows functions available during text entry <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Functions vary by windows. • Tap Set after entering characters.

Handwriting Functions

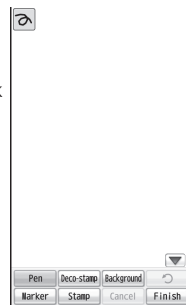
Handwriting Photo/Memo

Use Touch Pen to draw pictures/decorations or write text on messages or blogs.

- Files are saved to Data Folder as JPEG images (480x854). (☞ P.10-2)



1 In Viewer Position,  tab → **Handwriting** → **Photo/Memo**

- Tap **OK** when confirmation appears. Check **Confirm once** to show confirmation only once.



2 Select an item (See below)




Item	Operation/Description
Pen	Draw pictures/write characters with Touch Pen > Set thickness/color/type with Pen Palette → Draw pictures/write characters
Marker	Draw pictures/write characters with Marker > Set thickness/color with Marker Palette → Draw pictures/write characters

Item	Operation/Description
Deco-stamp	Add Deco-stamp (decorative borders) > Select a Deco-stamp → Slide Touch Pen to add decorative borders ● Studs - Stamps are randomly spaced and sized. Korokoro - Stamps are uniformly spaced and sized.
Stamp	Add stamps > Select a Stamp → Tap to add a stamp ● Press and slide stamp to move into position. Press and drag corner of stamp to rotate and enlarge/reduce size. ● When stamp position/size is set, tap background to fix into place; no further changes can be made.
Background	Change background color/image. Setting a background deletes any work in progress. > Set a color/image with Background Palette → YES ● Tap  to rotate image.
Cancel	Cancel all changes > YES
	Restore up to 10 changes ● Restoring Stamp (Move/scale up/scale down/rotate), Background and Cancel is unavailable.

- To show/hide Control Keys:  / 
- To hide a palette: 

3 **Finish** → Select a direction to save

4 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Save to pictures	Save file to Pictures folder
Attach to message	Attach file to S! Mail/PC Mail ( From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Graphic mail	Add file to Graphic Mail ( From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Post blog	Post to a blog ( P.8-7)
Add to custom. menu	Save file to Customize Menu as a shortcut
End without saving	End without saving file
Return	Return to editing window

Note

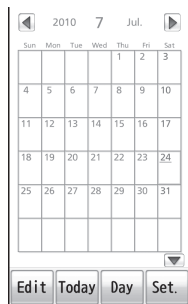
- Each change is automatically saved. Current settings appear at upper left side of Display.
- Length of strokes for Pen/Marker/Deco-stamp is limited.
- Handwriting functions are unavailable when phone memory is less than 500 KB. Delete old files.

Handwriting Diary

Create diary entries with handwritten notes, drawings, etc. Save one entry each per day and month. Manage up to 48 monthly and 1460 daily entries.

1 In Viewer Position, tab → **Handwriting** → **Diary**



- Tap **OK** when confirmation appears. Check **Confirm once** to show confirmation only once.









Month View



Day View

- To toggle Month/Day View: Tap **Month** or **Day**
- To show today's entry: Tap **Today**
- To show previous/next entry: Tap  / 
- To zoom in/out (Month View only): Tap or press down on target date → Use Slide Lever or tap + or -

2 **Edit** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Pen	 P.3-11)
Marker	 P.3-11)
Deco-stamp	 P.3-12)
Stamp	 P.3-12)
Disp. area	Zoom in/out Month View > Use Slide Lever or tap + or - <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Tap or press down on a date to zoom in/out. Press down and slide to move the page.
Cancel	Cancel all changes
	 P.3-12)

- To show/hide Control Keys:  / 
- To show/hide Palette: 

3 **Save**


Confirmation appears. Select **Yes** to create a link to this entry from Calendar.

Check **Confirm once** to show this confirmation only once.

When a daily entry is saved,  appears on that date in Month View.

- To end Handwriting Diary:  ( / )


Note

- If you tap **NO** in confirmation window, after Step 3, daily entries cannot be accessed from Calendar (View Daily Entries from Calendar:  P.3-14).

Functions Available for Handwriting Diary

Edit Handwriting Diary

> In Month View or Day View, **Set.** → **Operate data** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Delete data(Month)	Delete a monthly entry. When daily entries exist for that month, keep those entries or delete and save to Data Folder as image files. > YES (→ When a daily entries exists, YES or NO → For YES, YES or NO)
Delete data(Day)	Delete a daily diary > YES
DEL all diary data	Delete all diaries. Save diaries to Data Folder as still images > Enter Phone Password → Set → YES → YES or NO
Protect	Protect entries.  appears once an entry is protected > Protect/Unprotect(M/D) ● To cancel One entry: Repeat same procedure All entries: Unprotect all → YES
Save as image	Save entries to Data Folder as a JPEG image > YES ● Image sizes are as follows: Monthly diary: 1440x2562 Daily diary: Stand-by(480x854)

Note

● Save Location for Image Files

Entries deleted by **Delete data(Month)** are saved to "MonthDiaryYYYYMM_XXX" folder; entries deleted by **DEL all diary data** are saved to "AllDiaryYYYYMM_XXX" folder. (YYYY: year; MM: month; DD: day; XXX: number). Save up to 200 files.

View Diary Entries from Calendar

Create links to diary entries from Calendar.

> In Month View or Day View, **Set.** → **Add to schedule** → **YES** or **NO**

Note

● View up to 1000 daily diaries in Calendar.

Confirm Number of Saved Entries

> In Month View or Day View, **Set.** → **Num of diaries** → **OK**

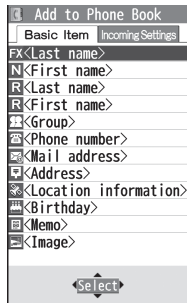
Phone Book

Overview	4-2
Saving to Phone Book	4-3
Phone Book Entry Items.....	4-3
Create New Entry	4-3
Other Ways to Add New Entries	4-5
Setting Groups	4-6
Searching/Using Phone Book.....	4-6
Making Calls from Phone Book.....	4-6
Using Phone Book.....	4-7
Managing Phone Book	4-9
Editing Phone Book Entries.....	4-9
Deleting Phone Book Entries.....	4-9
Copying/Deleting Phone Book Data	4-9
Phone Book Memory Status.....	4-9
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB).....	4-10
Manual Synchronization	4-11
Auto Synchronization	4-11
Viewing Sync Log	4-11
Account Details	4-12
Editing Account Details.....	4-12
Account Details Functions.....	4-12
Voice Dial.....	4-13
Adding Entries to Voice Dial.....	4-13
Searching Entries by Voice Dial	4-13

Overview

Save frequently used phone numbers and mail addresses to Phone Book.

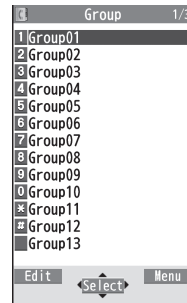
Supplement phone numbers and mail addresses with birthday, street address, an image or notes.



Set tones/image for each entry.



Sort entries into Groups.



Note

● Back-up Important Information

Keep a separate copy of Phone Book entry information. When battery is exhausted or removed for extended periods, entries may be lost. Handset damage may also affect data recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered entries.

Tip

● Backing up to microSD Card (P.10-21)

Saving to Phone Book

Phone Book Entry Items

Save up to 1000 entries in handset Phone Book; 50 entries to USIM Card Phone Book.

- Available entry items are as follows.


	Phone Book Entry Items	Handset	USIM Card
Basic Item	Name (Reading)	Available	Available
	Group	19	10
	Phone number	5	2
	Mail address	5	1
	Address	Available	N/A
	Location information	Available	N/A
	Birthday	Available	N/A
	Memo	Available	N/A
	Image	100	N/A
	Memory number	000 - 999	N/A
Incoming Settings	Ringtone	Available	N/A
	Vibrator		
	Notification Light		
	Screen		
	Msg Ringtone		
	Msg Vibrator		
	Msg Notif. Light		
Answer message			

- Phone Book entries in USIM Card can also be used in another SoftBank handset.


Create New Entry

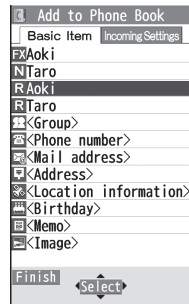
Save new entries to handset or USIM Card Phone Book.

- When saving to USIM Card Phone Book, set Save Settings (☞ P.18-12) to *USIM* or *Ask Every Time* beforehand.

1 Press and hold 

2 Enter Last name →
Enter First name

- For handset Phone Book, press  to switch Basic item and Incoming Settings tabs.



Handset Phone Book

3 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Last name	Save last name. For USIM Card, enter both first name and last name together > Enter last name
First name	Save first name > Enter first name
Reading (Last/First)	Automatically entered when last/first name is entered For USIM Card, both readings are entered together > To change reading, edit

Item	Operation/Description
Group	Categorize/search entries by group > Select a group ● Change group names or set ringtones for individual groups (☞ P.4-6).
Phone number	> Enter phone number (→ For handset, select an icon)
Mail address	> Enter mail address (→ For handset, select an icon) ● Save only phone number if mail address is "phone number@softbank.ne.jp".
Address	Save zip code, country/region, prefecture, city, number/street and additional information > Select an item → Enter each information → Home or Office → For entering other information, [Return]
Location information	Identify handset location and save information. Also, save location record selected from location logs > Select an item · By position loc. → YES → Check information → [Set] (To show information while positioning: [Use] → OK ; to retry positioning: [Retry]) · From loc. history → Select a location record to save
Birthday	> Enter birthday
Memo	> Enter memo

Item	Operation/Description
Image	Save a still image to appear for incoming calls > Select an item · Select image → Select a folder → Select a file · Shoot image → Frame subject → [Record]/ [Save]/ [] (☞ P.18-8) ● Saved image appears for incoming calls only when Phone Book Image (☞ P.18-8) is ON . If an image/video file is saved for Screen (☞ Below), that setting takes priority.
Memory number	> Enter memory number
Ring tone	> Ring Tones → Select a type → Select a folder → Select a ringtone
Vibrator	> Select vibrator → Select a pattern
Notification Light	> Select illumination → Select a pattern
Screen*	> SEL picture → Select image type → Select a folder → Select a file ● Saved image appears for incoming calls whether Phone Book Image (☞ P.18-8) is ON or OFF . Phone Book Image setting applies only when still image is saved for Image .
Msg Ringtone	> Ring Tones → Select a type → Select a folder → Select a ringtone
Msg Vibrator	> Select vibrator → Select a pattern
Msg Notif. Light	> Select illumination → Select a pattern
Answer message	> Select answer message → Select a message

* To cancel: Select **RLS picture**

4 [Finish]






Note

- Alternatively, create new entries from **Main Menu** ► **Phone** ► **Create New Entry**


Other Ways to Add New Entries

Save currently displayed phone numbers, mail addresses, still images or location information to Phone Book.

Example: Saving Numbers from Incoming Call Logs

- 1  → Highlight a record →  [Menu] → **Add to Phone Book**
- 2 **New Entry**
New → Enter details ( Step 3 on P.4-3)
Add to Existing Entry
Add → Select entry → Enter other details ( Step 3 on P.4-3)
 - When saving to USIM Card, **Overwrite** appears instead of **Add**.
- 3 When complete,  [Finish] (→ **YES**)


Note

- Press  [Menu] from a function. If **Add to Phone Book** appears, the information is savable to Phone Book. From a message window, select **Add Address** to save entries; from still image list/still image, select **Set display** → **Phone Book** to save entries.
- When saving new entries in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only, entries are saved to handset regardless of Save Settings.



Setting Groups

Sort entries by Group. Custom set ringtones/vibrators/notifications per group.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Group

-  appears for USIM Card Group.

1 Highlight a group →  [Edit] → Select an item → Set item

- Enter group name for " Group name."
- For other item operations:  P.4-3

2 When complete,  [Finish]

Check Settings

- > Select a group entry, or  [Menu] → *Check setting*
- Settings cannot be checked in USIM Card Group Phone Book.

Reset Group Setting

- > Highlight a group →  [Menu] → *Reset group* → YES

Note

- Custom settings unavailable for USIM Card Groups.
- Individually set ringtones are prioritized over those set for groups.

Searching/Using Phone Book




Making Calls from Phone Book

<Default> A-KA-SA-TA-NA/Reading

1 

2 Search Phone Book (See below)

- To change search method:  → Select a search method (See below)

Search Method	Operation/Description
A-KA-SA-TA-NA/Reading	Search entries by katakana syllabary. Names saved in Roman characters are saved under the 英 tab > Highlight a reading tab • Alternatively, enter partial reading.
Group	> Select a group
Memory Number*	Enter memory (entry) number to search for an entry > Enter a memory number • Alternatively, enter partial entry number.
Name	> Enter partial name → 
Phone Number	> Enter partial phone number → 
Mail Address	> Enter partial mail address → 
2-touch Dial*	> Show entries with memory (entry) numbers 000 - 009

* Handset Phone Book only

3 Select an entry

4 

5 Voice Calls

Highlight a phone number →

Video Calls

Highlight a phone number → [V. Call]

Note

- To scroll through entries, enter nothing and press (not available in **Group** or **2-touch Dial**).
- If no matches are found in **A-KA-SA-TA-NA/Reading** or **Memory Number** method, entries closest to condition appear.
- Once a method is selected, same method retains.
- Alternatively, search Phone Book from **Main Menu** ► **Phone** ► **Phone Book**

Additional Search/Dialing Methods

Open Tab Assigned to Key from Standby	Press and hold – Open search window assigned to key.
Enter Partial Number from Standby or during Call	Enter partial number →
By Memory Number	→ → Enter a memory number
By Single-digit Memory Number (2-touch Dial)	Enter last digit (–) of memory number 000-009 → Voice Call: / Video Call: [V. Call]

Using Phone Book

Use Phone Book Entries

> → Highlight an entry → [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
New	Add a new entry (From Step 2 on P.4-3)
Search method	Change search method
Sort¹	Change display order > Select an order
Send Ir data²	P.11-3)
IC transmission²	P.11-5)
Send to Bluetooth²	P.11-9)
Copy to microSD²	Copy an entry to microSD Card > YES ● To view copied data: P.10-20
S! AB BkUp	P.4-10)
Delete phone book	Step 2 on P.4-9)
Character size	Switch character size to large/standard
Set secret mode/Release secret²	Set/cancel Secret Mode for selected entry ● Entries saved as secret data appear only when Secret Mode or Secret Data Only is active (P.12-10).

¹ Available only when search method (P.4-6) is set to **Name**, **Phone Number** or **Mail Address**.

² Not available in USIM Card Phone Book.

■ Use Entry Details

> → Select an entry → [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Notify caller ID	Show/hide caller ID (P.2-3)
Prefix numbers	Make a call using a prefix number (P.2-3)
Int'l dial assist	Make an international call using Int'l Dial Assist > Select a country/region code →
Restrictions ¹	Activate restrictions on specified entry (P.12-12)
Edit Phone Book	Edit entry (From Step 3 on P.4-3) → YES
Delete phone book	> To delete a selected item: an item → YES > To delete a selected entry: Delete → YES
Add shortcut icon	Create a shortcut (P.1-21)
Compose message	Create a message to mail address of selected entry (From Step 4 on P.14-5)
Compose SMS	Create an SMS message to phone number of selected entry (From Step 4 on P.14-8) ● Message can be sent to SoftBank handsets only.
Send Ir data ¹	(P.11-3)
IC transmission ¹	(P.11-5)
Send to Bluetooth ¹	(P.11-9)

Item	Operation/Description
Copy to microSD ¹	Copy an entry to microSD Card > YES ● To display copied data: P.10-20
S! AB BkUp	(P.4-10)
Copy names	Copy a name
Copy phone numbers ²	Copy an item
Character size	Switch character size to large/standard
Set secret mode/ Release secret ¹	Set/cancel Secret Mode for selected entry ● Entries saved as secret data appear only when Secret Mode or Secret Data Only is active (P.12-10).
Copy to USIM/ Copy from USIM	Copy an entry to USIM Card > YES

¹ Not available in USIM Card Phone Book.




² Item names vary by selected item.

Note



- Insert entry details to a message (P.3-5).



Managing Phone Book

Editing Phone Book Entries

- 1  → Select an entry →  [Edit]
- 2 Edit ( From Step 3 on P.4-3) → **YES**

Deleting Phone Book Entries

- 1  → Highlight an entry →  [Menu] → **Delete phone book**
- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Delete this	> YES
Delete select	> Check entries to delete →  [Finish] → YES • To check/uncheck all entries:  [Menu] → Select all in tab* , Select all , Release all in tab* or Release all
Delete all in tab*	> YES
Delete all	Delete all entries (handset/USIM Card Phone Book) including Secret Mode entries > Enter Phone Password → YES → YES


* Available in **A-KA-SA-TA-NA/Reading, Group** and **Memory Number** search methods ( P.4-6)

Copying/Deleting Phone Book Data

Main Menu ► Phone ► Memory Manager

- 1 Enter Phone Password
- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Copy	Copy data between handset and USIM Card Phone Book > Copy to USIM or Copy from USIM
Delete	Delete data in handset or USIM Card Phone Book > Phone or USIM

- 3 **Phone Book** → Check entries →  [Finish] → **YES**

Phone Book Memory Status

Main Menu ► Phone ► Memory Status

View handset/USIM Card Phone Book memory status.

S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)

Back up Phone Book entries to SAB (network server); synchronize Phone Book and SAB; restore Phone Book after accidental loss/alteration.

- Separate subscription is required for this service.

Notes

- Fully charge battery beforehand (🔋 appears).
- Transmission fees apply when syncing, backing up or restoring Phone Book.
- Restoring Phone Book cancels these Phone Book settings: Ringtone, Vibrator, Notification Light, Picture, Answer message
- Subscription to the service activates Auto Sync Settings during network information retrieval to back up edited Phone Book entries. Note that initiating network information retrieval activates Auto Sync Settings even when Auto Sync Settings are **OFF**. When contract is terminated, check if Auto Sync Settings (🔗 P.4-11) are **OFF**.
- **SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.**
- **Information in Phone Book Address field is saved to building name field on SAB.**
- **When number of characters saved on SAB exceeds maximum number of characters savable to Phone Book, excess characters do not appear in Phone Book.**

Sync/Back Up/Restore

- Be careful of back-up/restoration timing or selecting a synchronization direction.
- When no Phone Book content exists, executing regular update or selecting **Sync from Client** or **Backup** deletes SAB content.
- When no SAB content exists, executing regular update or selecting **Sync from Server** or **Restore** deletes all Phone Book entries.

Capacity Disparities

- When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB, synchronization reflects lower limit.

Transfer to New Handsets

- S! Addressbook Back-up-compatible 3G Handsets: Data remains.
- Other 3G Handsets: Service subscription and data remains, but data is not accessible via handset (accessible via PCs).
- V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series: Service subscription is terminated and data is deleted.

Manual Synchronization

Regular Update

Update S! Addressbook and handset Phone Book after adding/editing entries.

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Addressbook BkUp

1 Start Sync

Selecting Sync Type

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Addressbook BkUp ► Details
► Backup/Restore

1 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB
Backup	Back up Phone Book to SAB
Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book
Restore	Restore Phone Book with SAB backup

2 YES

Auto Synchronization

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Addressbook BkUp ► Details
► Auto Sync Settings

1 ON

- To cancel: **OFF**

2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Every month	Synchronize monthly at specified time of the date > Enter a date → Set start time
Every week	Synchronize weekly at specified time of the day > Select a day → Enter start time
After Editing PB	Synchronize ten minutes after editing

3 Select a Sync Type → YES

■ View Auto Sync Settings

> In Step 1, **Confirm Settings**

Viewing Sync Log

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Addressbook BkUp ► Details
► Sync Log

1 Select a log

■ Delete Sync Log

> In Step 1, (highlight a log →)  [Menu] → **Delete this** or **Delete all**
(→ For **Delete all**, enter Phone Password) → YES

Account Details


Save phone number, mail address, street address, etc. in Account Details.






Editing Account Details

- 1  → 
- 2  [Edit]
- 3 Enter Phone Password → Edit →  [Finish]
 - Your subscribing phone number cannot be edited or deleted.

Account Details Functions

In Account Details, press  [Menu] for following operations.

Item	Operation/Description
Edit*	Edit Account Details ( Step 3 above)
Character size	Switch character size to large/standard
Display all data*	View all saved items such as phone numbers and mail addresses
Copy names	Copy a name
Copy phone numbers	Copy an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Item names vary by selected item. <i>Copy mail add./Copy address/Copy birthday/Copy notepad</i>

Item	Operation/Description
Send Ir data	Send details via Infrared ( P.11-3) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Alternatively, while Account Details is open, press  [Ir].
IC transmission	Send details via IC transmission ( P.11-5) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Alternatively, while Account Details is open, press  [ICtrans].
Copy to microSD	Copy details to microSD Card > YES <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To display copied data:  P.10-20 ● Account Details is saved as a Phone Book entry.
Erase phone number*	> Select an item → YES <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Delete items saved in Account Details. ● Item names vary by selected item. <i>Erase mail add./Erase address/Erase birthday/Erase memorandums/Delete image</i>
Reset*	Reset Account Details (handset number remains) > YES

* Enter Phone Password if required.

Note

- Insert Account Details information to a message ( P.3-5).

Voice Dial

Make a call by saying a Voice Dial name.

Note






- Keep microphone about 10 cm away from your mouth, and pronounce a Voice Dial name clearly. If microphone is too distant, your voice may not be recognized.
- Avoid making sounds unrelated to Voice Dial names (clearing your throat, clicking your tongue, heavy breathing, etc.).
- Say Voice Dial names in quiet places.
- Avoid pressing or brushing keys, or covering microphone with fingers when pronouncing a Voice Dial name.

Adding Entries to Voice Dial

Main Menu ► Phone ► Settings ► Voice Dial

- 1 <New> → Select a Phone Book entry
Entries with ★ are already saved in Voice Dial list.
 - 2 Enter a Voice Dial name
 - Only katakana entry is available for Voice Dial names.
- Edit Voice Dial Names**
- > In Step 1, highlight a Voice Dial name → [Edit] → Edit name → YES
- Delete Voice Dial Entries**
- > In Step 1, (highlight a Voice Dial name → [Menu] → *Delete this* or *Delete all* → YES

Searching Entries by Voice Dial

- 1 Press and hold  → Say a Voice Dial name
Say the name within four seconds after voice recognition tone sounds. Once Voice Dial is recognized, result appears.
- 2  [Detail] →  to show phone number
- 3 **Voice Calls**
Highlight phone number → 
Video Calls
Highlight phone number →  [V. Call]

Tip

- Settings** ● Auto Voice Dial ● Set Voice Dial via Earphone or Bluetooth® Device (📖 P.18-12)

Digital TV

Basics	5-2
Initial Setup	5-4
Channel Settings.....	5-4
Watching TV	5-5
Indicators.....	5-6
Program List (Japanese).....	5-7
Data Broadcast (Japanese).....	5-7
Functions while Viewing TV.....	5-7
TV Links (Japanese)	5-10
Saving TV Links.....	5-10
Opening TV Links.....	5-10
Functions Available in TV Link List.....	5-10
Recording/Playing Programs	5-11
Recording Current Program.....	5-11
Capturing Screenshots.....	5-11
Playing Recorded Programs.....	5-12
Viewing Captured Screenshots.....	5-13
Timer.....	5-13

Basics

942P supports One Seg terrestrial digital TV broadcasting.

One Seg

One Seg is a digital TV broadcasting service for mobile phones.

For more information, visit The Association for Promotion of Digital

Broadcasting Website:

[PC] <http://www.dpa.or.jp/>

[Handset] <http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>

(Japanese only)

Features

Watch TV Programs (☞ P.5-5)	Watch One Seg Digital TV on handset.
View Data Broadcast (☞ P.5-7)	Access a variety of program-related information.
Record TV Programs (☞ P.5-11)	Record program/capture still image while watching the program.
Set Timer (☞ P.5-13)	Use Timer to view/record programs. You can easily set Timer by using Program List (☞ P.5-7).

Mobile W-Speed

Frame rate of Digital TV images are automatically enhanced. Enjoy smooth image flow (☞ P.18-13).

- Mobile W-Speed is set to **ON** by default.
- When this function is set to **ON**, full effect of Image Quality (☞ P.18-13) may not be achieved.
- Depending on broadcasting condition, full effect of this function may not be achieved.
- Disabled during ECO Mode (☞ P.18-14) or AV output (☞ P.11-18).
- Disabled for playing back videos recorded with Mobile W-Speed set to **ON**.

Tip

- Other Functions while Viewing TV (☞ P.5-8)

Precautions

- Digital TV is available only in Japan.
- Incoming calls/messages may affect TV image or audio quality while TV is active.
- Digital TV may be disabled if USIM Card is not installed or SoftBank subscription is terminated.
- SoftBank is not liable for damages from accidental loss/alteration of handset/microSD Card information.
Data saved to handset (TV Links, Channel List, etc.) cannot be restored after repairs or handset replacement. Back up important information.

Signal Reception Areas

TV signal reception may be poor in the following conditions:

- Too far from or close to broadcasting stations
- Mountain areas or near tall buildings
- In moving vehicles, underground, in tunnels, etc.
- Near high-voltage wires, neon lights, wireless base stations, railroad tracks or highways
- Areas with numerous signal obstructions or areas where signal reception is blocked

When Battery is Running Out

- Warning tone sounds and warning message appears if Digital TV is activated with low battery.
- When battery runs low while programs are on or being recorded, handset operates as follows:
 - While Viewing
Warning tone sounds, and confirmation appears.
 - While Recording
Response differs depending on **Rec. When Low Battery** (☞ P.18-14) setting.
 - Continue Recording:** Warning tone does not sound and confirmation does not appear.
 - Stop Recording:** Warning tone sounds and confirmation appears.
- Watching TV while charging may shorten battery life.
- If recording ends due to low battery, recorded portion is automatically saved.

Incoming Transmissions

TV pauses for incoming calls. Resume TV after call ends.

- Incoming calls do not interfere with recording.

Incoming Messages

Notification Light flashes for incoming messages while TV is active or recording is in progress. Ticker also appears in Display.

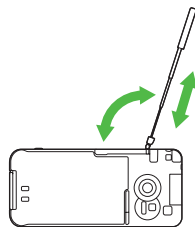
While ticker appears, press (✉) to view messages. TV sound plays in background while viewing messages. Press (⏮) to return to previous window.

- Show or hide ticker (Mail Ticker Display: ☞ P.18-13).
- When ticker is set to Off, TV pauses, incoming message window appears and ringtone sounds. Set Receiving Display (☞ P.18-20) to **Operation Preferred** to notify of incoming messages only with ☑.

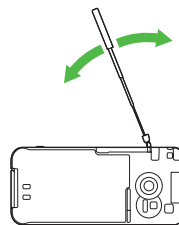
TV Antenna

Extend TV Antenna for optimal viewing.

- Adjust TV Antenna direction to optimize signal reception.
- Retract TV Antenna after viewing Digital TV.



Pull out completely



Rotate without force

Initial Setup

Set channels for your area.

- Up to ten Channel Lists can be saved.
- Set channels after extending TV Antenna.

Main Menu ▶ TV ▶ Channel Setting ▶ Select Area

- 1 Select a region → Select a prefecture
- 2 **YES**

Note

- If manual setup fails, try automatic channel setup (👉 Below).
- Handset detects a change in reception area after moving to a different area. Set Channel List for that area.

Channel Settings

Automatic Channel Setup

Main Menu ▶ TV ▶ Channel Setting ▶ Automatic

- 1 **YES**
- 2 After channel search, **YES** → Enter title
 - If title is not entered, date (year/month/day/hour/minute) is automatically saved as title.


Using Channel List

From ▶ Main Menu ▶ TV ▶ Channel List



■ Set Channels

- > Select a Channel List
- Channel List is set, and available channels appear.
- Select a channel to access the station.


■ Delete Channel List

- > Highlight a Channel List →  [Menu] → **Delete** → **YES**
- Selected Channel List cannot be deleted.




■ Delete Channels from Channel List

- > Highlight a Channel List →  [Detail] → Highlight a channel →  [Menu] → **Delete** → **YES**
- Channels in selected Channel List cannot be deleted.

■ Edit Title

- > Highlight a Channel List →  [Menu] → **Edit title** → Edit

■ Reassign a Remote Control Number (Keypad) to a Channel

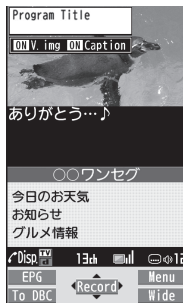
- > Highlight a Channel List →  [Detail] →  [Menu] → **Remote control #** → Select a channel → Select a new remote control number →  [Finish] → **YES**

Watching TV

- Set channels beforehand (☞ P.5-4).
- Switch Normal Position/Viewer Position for portrait/landscape view while viewing TV.










1 

Viewer appears.



Viewer

2 Select a channel

Direct Channel Access	 -   (Channel 10)  (Channel 11)  (Channel 12)
Previous/Next Channel	
Channel Search	Press and hold  ● To stop:  [Cancel] / 

3 To end TV,  → **End TV**

- To play TV sound in the background:  → **Change to BGM**

Switch Landscape/Portrait View in Normal Position



- Press to toggle views.

Note

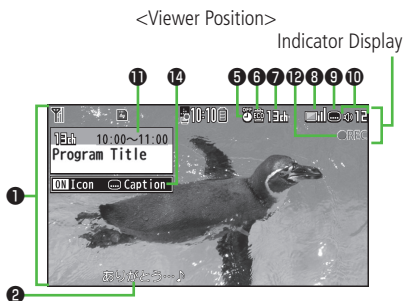
- Alternatively, **Main Menu** ▶ **TV** ▶ **Watch TV**
- Set Digital TV to activate upon switching to Viewer Position (Work with Style: ☞ P.18-7)

Tip

- Use Bluetooth® Device for Listening to Music (☞ P.11-10)
- View handset TV images on a TV set (☞ P.11-18)

Indicators

- Screenshots are provided for reference only.
Actual handset windows differ in appearance.



Item	Description	Operation (Normal Position)
1 Image	—	—
2 Captions	—	—
3 Data Broadcast	(☞ P.5-7)	—
4 Data Broadcast Mode	Data Broadcast Mode off Data Broadcast Mode on	[To TV]/[To DBC] ²
5 Off timer	(☞ P.5-9)	—
6 ECO Mode	(☞ P.18-14)	—
7 Channel	(☞ P.5-4) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When multiple programs are available in the same broadcasting station, "service number/total numbers" appears. 	—
8 Signal Strength Level	Strong ← → Weak Out of range	—
9 Receiving Captions	—	—
10 Volume	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust volume: ¹ • Mute/Resume: ¹
11 Program Title	—	/ ³
12 Recorder Status ¹	Recording Timer Set	(☞ P.5-11, P.5-13)
13 Display/Caption ²	Display: ON/OFF/Large Caption: ON/OFF	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Each key press toggles settings.
14 Indicator/Caption ³	Indicators: ON/OFF Caption: Upper position/Lower position/OFF	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Each key press toggles settings.

- ¹ Only when Data Broadcast Mode is off ² Only in Portrait View ³ Only in Landscape View
 • Tap Display in Viewer Position to show Control Keys and Slide Lever (☞ P.1-32).

Program List (Japanese)

Check program schedules and set timer to view/record TV programs.



Main Menu ▶ TV ▶ Program List

- Confirmation appears when using Program List for first time. Follow onscreen instructions.
- See Program List Help menu for usage information.

View Program List while TV is Active

>  [EPG]

Show Program Information while TV is Active

> Press and hold  [EPG] → To return to Viewer, 

Data Broadcast (Japanese)



Access a variety of program-related information such as still images and videos.

- Data Broadcast is not available in Landscape View (Wide Screen).

1 Activate TV (Data Broadcast Mode off) →

 [To DBC]

 appears.


-  to select information
- To deactivate Data Broadcast Mode:  [To TV]

Note

- Viewing Data Broadcast information requires no fees; however, accessing websites will incur transmission fees.

Functions while Viewing TV







Sound Settings

> While TV is active,  [Menu] → **Settings** → **Sound** → **Sound Effect** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Auto Volume	Automatically increase to optimum volume > ON or OFF
Remaster	Adjust sound quality to reproduce original sound > ON or OFF
Listening	Adjust to natural sound when using earphone or Bluetooth® device > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Surround: Reproduce natural and stereophonic sound · Natur 1 or Natur 2: Complement sound specific to earphone to reproduce natural sound · OFF: Turn off Listening setting
Equalizer	Change sound quality when using earphone or Bluetooth® device > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Normal: Reproduce normal sound · H. BASS1: Enhance low-pitched sound · H. BASS2: Enhance low-pitched sound even more · Voice: Make voice clear · Train: Minimize sound leakage

Other Functions

> While TV is active, follow the steps below

Item	Operation/Description
Access Internet	<p>>  → Open Menu → Yahoo!</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Subsequent operations vary by browser and connection (☞ P.15-4 to P.15-6).
Make a Voice Call/Video Call	<p>>  → Stand-by display → Enter a number →  (For Video Call,  [V. Call])</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Interrupt TV during call. After call, TV resumes. ● Recording will not be interrupted.
Use Messaging	<p>>  → Stand-by display → </p>

Functions Available while Viewing TV

> While TV is active,  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Program info	View current program information
Program list	View Program List
Disp.Ch./operation	<p>> Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Channel info: View channel details. Select a channel to watch that Station · Channel List: View Channel List (☞ P.5-4) · Channel Setting: Set channels for your area (☞ P.5-4) · Add to ch. list: Add current station to Channel List. Assign current station to lowest available number key · Tune service: Select a program when multiple programs are available from the same broadcasting company

Item	Operation/Description
Data Broadcasting ¹	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Back to data BC: End Data Broadcast site and return to Data Broadcast window · Reload contents: Reload page (Data Broadcast link) · Certificate: View owner, author, validity period and serial number of certificate used in SSL communication · Images²: Show/hide images on Data Broadcast sites · Sound Effect²: Turn on/off sounds from Data Broadcast/sites · Reset Settings²: Show confirmation on Data Broadcast
TV link list ¹	Show TV Link details
Compose message	Compose a message while audio continues (☞ From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Display/Operation → SW V. img/Caption¹: Switch view (switch image size/image off) · Display/Operation → Switch TV/data BC¹: Toggle Data Broadcast Mode on/off (☞ P.5-7) · Display/Operation → Icons²: Set Indicator Display in Landscape View · Display/Operation → AV output: View a Digital TV image on a TV set or other devices (☞ P.11-18) · Display/Operation → Work When Folded²: Continue or end TV when handset is closed

Item	Operation/Description
Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Video → Brightness: Set backlight brightness · Video → Mobile W-Speed²: Enhance frame rate of TV images automatically · Video → Image Quality²: Select an image quality · Video → LCD AI: Activate image compensation according to backlight · Sound → Sound Effect² (☞ P.5-7) · Sound → Main/sub sound: Set main/sub sound · Sound → Switch audio data: Available only when multiple audio data are supported · ECO Mode²: Set power saving mode (☞ P.18-14) · Off timer: When set time passes, confirmation appears asking whether to end viewing/recording TV
Key guide	View key operation guide while watching TV

¹ Available only in Portrait View

² Available from User Settings even while TV is not active (☞ P.18-13)

TV Links (Japanese)

Saving TV Links

- Following function is not available in Landscape View (Wide Screen).

1 Switch Data Broadcast Mode on → Select a link

2 **YES**

Follow onscreen instructions to save link.

Opening TV Links

Main Menu ► TV ► TV Link


1 Select a TV Link

- Confirmation appears when Internet access is required. Select **YES** to proceed.
- If TV Link is expired, confirmation appears asking whether to delete link.

Functions Available in TV Link List

Main Menu ► TV ► TV Link

1  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Display detail	Show TV Link title, URL, summary, content type, expiration date
No. of TVlink	Show number of saved TV Links
Delete	> Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Delete this → YES · Delete selected → Check TV link(s) to delete →  [Finish] → YES · Delete all → Enter Phone Password → YES

Recording/Playing Programs

Recording Current Program

Save programs as videos or still images.
Recordings are saved to microSD Card.

- microSD Card: P.10-18
- Save up to 2GB of data at a time.

Recording Time (total)*	Approx. 640 minutes
Savable Files	99 files

* Average recordable time per 2GB microSD

- Recording is unavailable when signal strength drops to .

1 Activate TV → [Record]

appears, and recording starts.

2 [Stop] to stop recording

Program is saved to microSD Card.

Note

- In the following cases, recording ends and recorded portion is automatically saved:
 - File size is over 2GB
 - microSD Card memory is full
- Recorded files are not saved to handset.
- Do not remove microSD Card while recording.
- Recording continues even if signal strength level is ; however, images and audio are not saved.
- Recording is disabled during AV output.

Capturing Screenshots

Captured screenshots are saved to handset.

- This feature is unavailable when signal strength is or Data Broadcast Mode is on.

1 Activate TV (Data Broadcast Mode off) → press and hold

Note

- Captions cannot be captured.
- Capturing is disabled during AV output.

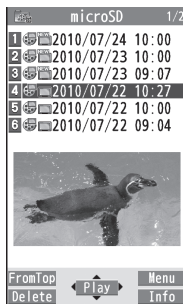
Playing Recorded Programs

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► TV ► Video

1 Select a video

Playback starts.

- When a playback position is recorded to video, playback starts from the position. Press [FromTop] to play back from beginning.
- When a video contains divided files, file list opens. Select the file to play back.



Example: Video Folder

2 to stop playback

Playback Operations

Volume	
Mute/Cancel Mute	
Fast-forward	(Press once: 10x; Press twice: 30x)
Fast-rewind	(Press once: 10x; Press twice: 30x)
Pause/Resume	
Play Frame by Frame	Pause playback → [Frame] ● Play back frame by frame.
Skip Rewind ¹	Press and hold /
Skip Forward ²	Press and hold /

Toggle Playback Speed	[/ / /] (Summary View) ● Summary View adjusts playback speed according to audio.
View Title	 ● Time bar also appears. ● Title also appears when views are switched.
Toggle Data View	Display title → ● In Landscape View, each key press toggles indicators (icons) and captions on/off. (Each key press also switches time bar position regardless of whether caption is shown.)
Toggle Display View/Data View	 ● When Data Broadcast Mode is off, each key press toggles views. ● When Data Broadcast Mode is on, each key press toggles Data View.
Data Broadcast Mode On/Off	 ● In Landscape View, turn program title on.

¹ Unavailable if file is under 12 seconds long.

² Unavailable if file is under 28 seconds long.

Viewing Captured Screenshots

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► TV ► Image

1 Select an image


Timer


• Set up to 100 timer entries to watch or record programs.

Main Menu ► TV

1 **Timer Watching** or **Timer Recording**

2  [New] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Channel	> Select a channel
Title	> Enter a program name
Start date	Set date and time to start and end viewing/recording a program
End date ¹	> Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Enter date → Enter a date and time · Choose date → Select a date → Enter date and time
Repeat	> Select a repeat type (→ For Select day , select a day (days) →  [Finish])
Alarm ²	> ON or ON/Set time → For ON/Set time , select an alarm time


Item	Operation/Description
Tone ²	> Select an alarm type → Select a folder → Select an alarm
Alarm ¹	> ON or OFF
Alarm vol./Volume	>  to adjust volume <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● For Timer Recording, Escalating Tone cannot be set.
Act. TV w/ alarm ²	> ON or OFF <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When ON is set, Digital TV activates from alarm notification window.
Priority ¹	Set handset response when Timer Recording starts <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > Recording or Operation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When Recording is set, active function suspends/ends, and recording starts. ● When Operation is set, confirmation appears. To suspend/end active function, select YES and <input type="radio"/> to start recording.

¹ Timer Recording only




² Timer Watching only

3  [Finish] → For **Timer Recording**, select **YES** or **YES (confirm once)**

Note

- Select timer entries to check details;  **[Edit]** to edit details.
- Timer Recording does not start if Internet and two other functions are active simultaneously.
- Alarm does not sound for Timer Watching/Timer Recording in following functions. For Timer Recording, complete followings (in parentheses) one minute before timer starts; otherwise, recording does not start.
 - While handset is off (Turn on handset)
 - While Privacy Key Lock is active (Cancel lock)
 - While Personal Data Lock is active (Cancel/change lock)
 - During data transfer (Complete transfer)
 - During Infrared transmission, IC transmission or Bluetooth® transmission (Complete transmission)
 - During software update (Complete update)

Other Timer Operations**Main Menu** ► TV**1** *Timer Watching* or *Timer Recording***2**  **[Menu]** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
New	Set a timer entry to watch/record a program ( P.5-13)
Edit	Edit entry details ( P.5-13)
Sort	Sort timer entries > Select an order
Delete this	> YES
Delete past	Timer entries with start/end time set prior to current date/ time are deleted > YES
Delete selected	> Check timer entries to delete →  [Finish] → YES
Delete all	> Enter Phone Password → YES
Memory Status*	Show memory status

* Timer Recording only

Checking Timer Recording Results**Main Menu** ► TV**1** *Recording Result* → Select a result

- Details appear.

Camera

Before Using Camera	6-2
Notes.....	6-2
File Formats & Save Location	6-2
Camera Modes & Positions	6-3
Camera Mode & Image Size.....	6-3
Camera Display Indicators	6-4
Pictures	6-7
Capturing Still Images In Viewer Position	6-7
Capturing Still Images in Normal Position.....	6-8
Videos	6-8
Other Camera Functions	6-9
Auto Focus Lock	6-9
AF Tracking	6-9
Zoom	6-10
Photo Light	6-11
Auto Timer	6-12
Continuous Shooting.....	6-12
Auto Shutter (Digicam Mode Only)	6-13
Setting Photo Mode According to Scene.....	6-14
Focus Settings	6-15
Viewing Saved Images	6-16

Before Using Camera

942P features approximately 13.2 Mega Pixel CMOS Auto-focus Camera capable of capturing still images and videos.

- Use Picture Album (📖 P.10-24) for viewing still images or slideshow.

Notes


- Remove dust/debris from lens cover with a soft cloth.
- Handset movement may blur images especially in dark places; hold handset firmly.
- Capturing/saving images immediately after handset has been left in a hot place may affect image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may affect image quality.
- Photo Light illuminates or flashes while Camera is active. Photo light cannot be turned off.

Shutter Click

Shutter click sounds at fixed volume even in Manner Mode.

- To change shutter click sound: 📖 P.18-16, P.18-17

Note

- Camera is not available when battery is low.
- Incoming calls, Alarm and low battery cancel Camera. Captured images/recorded videos are retained. Save data when Camera restarts.
- When left in Viewfinder for three minutes, Camera is canceled.
- Press  (📷/📹) firmly to activate Camera/capture images.

File Formats & Save Location

Still images/videos are saved to Data Folder.

Image Type	File Format	Save Location
Still images	JPEG (.jpg)	Data Folder (Pictures)
Videos	MPEG-4 (.3gp), ASF (.asf)	Data Folder (Videos)

- To save files to microSD Card, change save location (📖 P.18-16, P.18-17).
- To view memory status: 📖 P.18-16, P.18-17

Note

- When recording time (File size setting: 📖 P.18-17) is set to **Long time**, videos are saved to microSD Card.

















































Camera Modes & Positions

Camera Mode		Normal Position	Viewer Position
Still Images	Digicam mode	Available	Available
	Photo mode	Available	N/A
Videos	Video Camera mode	Available	N/A

Note

- Set Camera to activate upon switching to Viewer Position (Work with Style:  P.18-7)

Camera Mode & Image Size

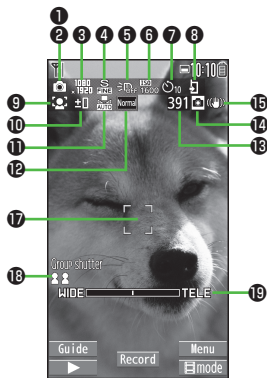
Camera Mode	Icon	Image Size	
Digicam mode	 	13M	
	 	9.7M Wide	
	 	Square(large)	
	 	8M	
	 	5M	
	 	3M	
	 	2M Wide	
	 	2M	
	 	Stand-by	
	 	VGA	
Photo mode	 	Square(small)	
	 	3M	
	 	2M Wide	
	 	2M	
	 	Stand-by	
	Continuous shooting	 	VGA
		 	QVGA
		 	QCIF
		 	Sub-QCIF
		Video Camera mode	 
 	HVGA Wide		
 	QVGA		
 	QCIF		
 	Sub-QCIF		

Camera Display Indicators

- Images shown below are for reference only.

Digicam Mode

<Normal Position>



<Viewer Position>

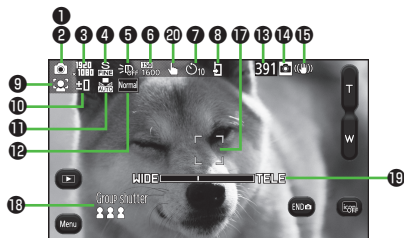
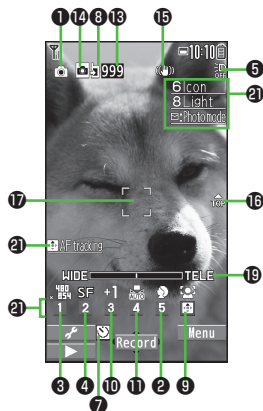
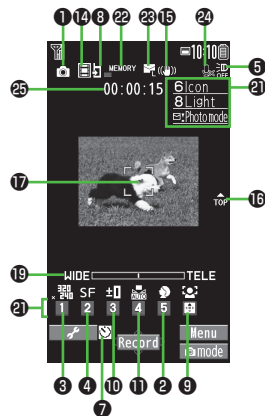


Photo Mode



Video Camera Mode










Key Guidance

- Press [Guide] in Digicam mode to view Key operation guidance (Normal Position).
- For Photo mode/Video Camera mode, follow the steps below to change settings:
 - Press keys indicated by (→) to select an item
 - [] → to select a setting → to select an item

- Most icons and operation descriptions are based on Digicam mode. Actual screenshots and operations may differ from actual icons/operations.


Item	Description
1 Photo mode (☞ P.6-14)	iA (Intelligent Auto) Normal Scene MyOriginal (For Scene/MyOriginal, indicators may vary depending on setting.)
2 Scene	Portrait Sports Food Scenery Night mode Backlight Character Snow Sunset Pet
3 Image size	Show image size (☞ P.6-3)
4 Image QLTY	Normal Fine Super fine
5 Photo light	ON OFF
6 ISO setting (☞ P.18-16)	ISO 200 - ISO 12800 200 auto to 12800 auto
7 Auto timer	Digicam mode: 10 seconds 2 seconds Photo mode/Video Camera mode:
8 Store in	Phone microSD
9 Focus (☞ P.6-15)	FaceDetect AF Auto Close-up Landscape AF tracking
10 Brightness	Adjust brightness (Level -3 to +3)
11 White BAL	Auto Fine Cloudy Bulb Light
12 Color mode	Normal Sepia Monochrome Vivid Natural Whitening Suntan
13 No. of frames	Show number of remaining frames
14 Camera-mode	Digicam mode/Photo mode Video camera mode Con.set. (Action mode in Digicam mode) Action mode in Photo mode (Auto/Auto bracket/Manual)
15 Img. stabilizer	Correct camera shake
16 Top indicator	Indicate vertical direction
17 Focus Guide	Auto focus guide AF tracking guide
18 AutoShutter (☞ P.6-13)	Love shutter (Friends/Lovers/Lovers+Smile) Group shutter (One to Five) Smile shutter



	Item	Description
19	Zoom bar	Indicate zoom level ( P.6-10)
20	TouchAF/AE ( P.6-9)	 Valid  Invalid
21	Key Guidance	Show key operation guidance
22	Memory capacity bar	Indicate memory status (appears in red when memory is full)
23	File size setting	 Mail restrict'n(S)  Mail restrict'n(L)  Long time
24	Movie type set	Record video without audio
25	Recordable time	Indicate recordable time

Pictures

Capture still images in Digicam mode or Photo mode.

Intelligent Auto

Camera automatically selects the appropriate settings by environment. Indicator is animated when mode changes (Example:  Face Detection).

- Face Detection:  P.6-15
- Photo mode ( P.6-14) returns to Intelligent Auto next time Camera activates in Digicam mode or Photo mode.

Capturing Still Images In Viewer Position

Use Digicam mode to capture images in Landscape View.



1  tab → **Camera** → **Digicam**

Viewfinder appears.

2 Frame subject →  ( / )

Shutter click sounds at fixed volume, then captured image appears for two seconds.



Image is automatically saved.

- To view the captured image immediately, tap . Tap  to return to Viewfinder again.

Functions Available in Viewfinder





Picture Viewfinder (Digicam Mode)

	Item	Description
1	Activate Picture Album	Activate Picture Album to view captured images <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Use as a slideshow ( P.10-27)● Tap  to return to Viewfinder
2	Menu	View function menu
3	Zoom	Adjust zoom level
4	Cancel Camera	Cancel Camera
5	Show Indicator	Show/hide indicators

Auto review












View captured still images in Postview window when capturing in Digicam mode.

- To change Auto review setting:  P.18-16
- When Auto review is set to **Hold**, Postreview window remains. To return to Viewfinder, tap .
- Images are saved automatically, regardless of settings.

Capturing Still Images in Normal Position

Use Digicam mode/Photo mode to capture images in Portrait View.

Operation descriptions are based on Photo mode.

- 1  or 
Viewfinder (Digicam mode) appears.
- 2  [Menu] → **Camera-mode**
→ **Photo mode**
Viewfinder (Photo mode) appears.
- 3 Frame subject →  [Record],
 or 
Shutter click sounds at fixed volume.
Image is automatically saved.
● To view images immediately after capturing:   →  
to return to Viewfinder
- 4  to exit
Return to Standby.











Picture Viewfinder
(Photo Mode)

Note

- To select save location each time, turn Auto save set to **OFF** (P.18-16).

Videos




Shoot videos in Portrait View.

- 1 Press and hold 
Viewfinder appears.
- 2 Frame subject →  [Record],
 or  to start recording
Tone sounds and ●REC appears.
- 3  [Stop],  or  to end recording
Tone sounds.
Video is automatically saved.
● Recording stops automatically at maximum recording time.
- 4  to exit
Return to Standby.



Video Viewfinder

Note











- To toggle Digicam mode/Video Camera mode:  →  [mode / mode]
- To preview each video before saving, turn Auto save ( P.18-17) to **OFF**.

Other Camera Functions

- Most operation descriptions are based on Digicam mode in Normal Position. Actual screenshots and operations may differ from actual operations in Viewer Position, Photo/Action/Video Camera mode.

Auto Focus Lock

Bring focus on subject at center of display automatically. Lock focus on subject, and recompose your picture.

- 1 In Viewfinder, ,  or  halfway
When in focus, handset sounds. Focus Guide turns green, and focus is locked.
 - When out of focus, Focus Guide turns red.
 - To cancel focus locked by  or : 
 - To cancel focus locked by : Release finger from 
- 2 Determine composition
- 3 Capture image in selected camera mode
 - In Step 1, press  halfway to lock focus, then press  firmly to shoot.

AF Tracking

Position AF tracking guide on subject. AF tracking guide appears and tracks moving subject while adjusting focus and exposure for subject.

Note

- When Camera is unable to track subject (e.g. when subject is out of Viewfinder), AF tracking is canceled.
- Depending on situation, AF tracking may track unintended subject.
- AF tracking is not available when Auto shutter is in use or certain image size is set.

TouchAF/AE (in Viewer Position)

- Available only when Touch AF/AE is set to **Valid** ( P.18-16).

1 Tap subject in Viewfinder










When subject is recognized, AF tracking guide turns yellow and begins tracking subject.

- To cancel: 



2 to capture the image

AF Tracking (in Normal Position)

- In Digicam/Photo mode, 
AF tracking guide appears.
- Position AF tracking guide on subject and press 
When subject is recognized, AF tracking guide turns yellow and begins tracking subject.
 - To cancel:  or 
-  [Record],  or  (Camera/Video) to capture the image
 - Alternatively, press  halfway to lock focus, then press  to capture an image.



Zoom

- In Viewfinder,  (zoom in) or  (zoom out)
 - For continuous zoom: Press and hold 

Note

- Zoom may change image quality.

Image Size & Zoom Ratio


Camera Mode	Image Size	Zoom Level	Zoom Ratio
Digicam mode	13M	1-21	2.0x
	9.7M Wide	1-21	2.0x
	Square(large)	1-21	2.0x
	8M	1-21	3.0x
	5M	1-21	3.0x
	3M	1-21	6.0x
	2M Wide	1-21	6.0x
	2M	1-21	6.0x
	Stand-by	1-21	6.0x
	VGA	1-21	6.0x
	Square(small)	1-21	6.0x
Continuous shooting	3M	1-21	3.0x
	2M Wide	1-21	3.0x
	2M	1-21	3.0x
	Stand-by	1-21	3.0x

Camera Mode	Image Size	Zoom Level	Zoom Ratio	
Photo mode	3M	1-21	3.0x	
	2M Wide	1-21	3.0x	
	2M	1-21	3.0x	
	Stand-by	1-21	3.0x	
	VGA	1-21	3.0x	
	QVGA	1-21	6.0x	
	QCIF	1-21	10.8x	
	Sub-QCIF	1-21	16.3x	
	Continuous shooting	VGA	1-21	3.3x
		QVGA	1-21	6.5x
QCIF		1-21	10.8x	
Sub-QCIF		1-21	16.3x	
Video Camera mode	VGA	1-21	1.5x	
	HVGA Wide	1-21	1.6x	
	QVGA	1-21	2.2x	
	QCIF	1-21	3.7x	
	Sub-QCIF	1-21	4.7x	

Photo Light

<Default> OFF






Select a Photo Light setting.

1 In Viewfinder,  [Menu] → *Photo light* → **ON** or **OFF**



Note

- Photo light is not available when battery is low.
- When image is captured at close range or your hand is too close to Photo light, image color and brightness may differ in appearance from actual subject.

Auto Timer

- In Viewfinder,  [Menu] → *Auto timer* → **10 seconds** or **2 seconds**
 - In Photo/Video Camera/Action modes:  [Menu] → *Auto timer* → **ON** → Enter time (seconds)
-  [Record],  or 

Auto timer tone sounds. After set period of time, shutter is released and recording starts.

 - While Auto timer is active, press  [Quit] or  to return to Viewfinder without canceling Auto timer.





Note







- Auto timer is not available when Action mode is set to *Manual*.
- Auto Timer is set to **OFF** after capturing.

Continuous Shooting

In Digicam Mode

Capture a succession of six or eight still images. Number of captured images varies by image size.

- In Viewfinder,  [Menu] → *Con. set.* → **Continuous**
 - Frame subject →  [Record],  or 




Continuous shooting starts.
Postview window appears.
 - Save One**
Highlight a image →  [Save]
 - To view full-size image: Highlight an image →  [Scale up] (→  to toggle full-size images) → To save the image,  [Save]
- Save All**
 [STO all]
- To return to Viewfinder without saving images: 

Note


- In Viewer Position, tap full-size image to return to Postview window.

In Photo Mode

Capture a succession of up to 20 still images automatically with a single press.

- 1 In Viewfinder,  [Menu] → **CHG camera-mode** → **Action mode**
- 2 Frame subject →  [Record],  or  (Cam/Flash)
Images are automatically saved.

Change Continuous Shooting Settings

> After Step 1 above,  [Menu] → **Cont. shooting set.** → Select an item (See below)


Item	Operation/Description
Action mode	> Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Auto: Capture multiple still images automatically · Manual: Capture one by one manually · Auto bracket: Auto-capture nine images of varying brightness or color
Shot interval	Select an interval when Action mode is set to Auto > Select an interval
Shot number*	Set number of images when Action mode is set to Auto or Manual > Enter number

* Savable number of images is as follows:

- VGA (480x640): 4 (Unchangeable)
- QVGA (240x320): 5 to 10
- QCIF (144x176): 5 to 20
- Sub-QCIF (96x128): 5 to 20




Auto Shutter (Digicam Mode Only)

Shutter automatically releases when camera detects certain conditions. Select an Auto Shutter type to specify condition (When Photo mode is set to *Intelligent Auto* or Focus is set to *FaceDetect*).

- 1 In Viewfinder,  [Menu] → **AutoShutter** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
OFF	Cancel Auto shutter setting
Love shutter	Shutter releases when two faces move close together > Friends, Lovers or Lovers+Smile <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When Lovers is set, distance between two faces is closer than Friends.
Group shutter	Camera detects up to five faces. When more people are in frame, Auto timer activates and shutter releases in three seconds > Select number of people
Smile shutter	Shutter releases when Camera detects a smiling face. If multiple faces are detected, shutter releases when camera detects a smile in yellow focus guide

Note


- Alternatively, capture still images by pressing  [Record],  or  even when Auto shutter is set.
- Auto Timer is set to **OFF** after capturing.



Setting Photo Mode According to Scene

<Default>

Digicam mode/Photo mode: iA (Intelligent Auto)

Action mode/Video Camera mode: Normal

- 1 In Viewfinder,  [Menu] → **Photo mode** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
iA*	Camera recognizes shooting environment and select appropriate camera settings automatically. Indicator is animated when mode changes (Example:  Face Detection) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Mode does not change after Auto Focus Lock. Cancel Auto Focus Lock.
Normal	Capture an image in normal mode
Scene	Adjust brightness and color tone according to scene > Select an item
MyOriginal*	Create and save custom-settings > Select a setting (→ For Digicam mode, Shoot in this setting) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To save customized settings:  Right

* Still images only

Note


- Alternatively, in Photo/Action/Video Camera modes, press and hold

  →  to select a mode


Saving as Original Setting





Save up to three customized settings to each camera mode.

Save in Digicam Mode

- >  [Menu] → **Photo mode** → **MyOriginal** → Select a setting → **Save present setting** → YES → OK

Save in Photo/Action Mode

- > Press and hold  [] → **Photo mode MyOriginal** → Follow the steps (See below)



Item	Operation/Description
Save setting	> Highlight a setting →  [Save] (→ When confirmation appears, YES) → Edit title
Open setting	> Select a setting
Edit title	> Highlight a setting →  [Edit] → Edit title
View detail	> Highlight a setting →  [Detail]
Delete setting	> Highlight a setting →  [Delete] → YES


Focus Settings

<Default>

Digicam/Photo/Video Camera mode: FaceDetect
Action mode: Auto



Select a focus setting to suit the subject/occasion
(Unavailable when Photo mode is set to *iA*).

- 1 In Viewfinder,  [Menu] → **Focus**
 - In Photo/Video Camera/Action mode:  [Menu] → **Camera settings** → **Focus**
- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
FaceDetect	Focus locks on faces
Auto	Auto focus
Close-up	Focus for close-ups
Landscape	Focus on distant landscapes
AF tracking	Focus on moving subject <ul style="list-style-type: none">● AF Tracking:  P.6-10

- May not be available depending on camera mode.

Note

- Camera focuses on subject at a distance of over 10 cm.
- In Normal Position, press  in viewfinder to change focus settings.
- When Photo mode is set to **iA**, toggle current focus setting and AF tracking by pressing .
- While Camera is focusing, Focus sound is heard in the following situations:
 - When Focus setting is set to **AF tracking**
 - When Photo mode is set to **iA**
 - During video recording

Face Detection

- Detect up to five faces within 1.7 meters.
- Show yellow focus guide when a face is detected.
- Automatically focus on one face when more than one is detected. (Focus guide turns yellow once focus is on the face.)
- Faces may not be detected in following conditions:
 - Face is tilted
 - A part of face is covered by glasses, hat, mask or shadow
 - Face is too small, big or dark for screen
 - Face is at edge of screen
 - Subject or handset moves too fast
- Shoot with Auto focus if detection fails.

Viewing Saved Images

Main Menu ► Camera

1 Open Pictures
Picture Album

Open Videos
Videos

2 Select a folder

3 Select a file

■ Open Pictures Saved on microSD Card

> In Step 1, *Picture Album* → *100_PANA* (SD folder)

■ Open Videos Saved on microSD Card

> In Step 1, *Videos* → [microSD] → Select a folder

■ Check Still Images in Viewfinder

> In Viewfinder, [] []

● To return to Viewfinder: [] []

Note

- Alternatively, view still images from **Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Pictures ►** Select a folder
- Alternatively, view videos from **Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Videos ►** Select a folder
- Picture Album cannot be activated while S! Appli is paused.

Tip

● Editing Still Images (☞ P.10-11)

Mobile Widget

Mobile Widget (Japanese)	7-2
Using Widgets	7-2
Downloading Widgets	7-2
Activating Widgets	7-3
Widget Functions	7-4

Mobile Widget (Japanese)

Paste widgets to Standby to access information or tools from Standby.

Network Widget

Some widgets may periodically connect to network, incurring packet transmission fees.

- While widgets appear in Standby, updated information for some widgets may be automatically retrieved. During transmission, other functions (e.g. Video Calls) may be disabled.

Tip

Settings

- Auto Update
- Auto Roaming
- Show/Hide Confirmation when Roaming Abroad
- Cookies Sending/Receiving
- Delete Cookies
- Pointer Speed (☞ P.18-18)

Using Widgets

Downloading Widgets

Main Menu ► Widget

1 Widget Store

Handset connects to the Network, and download site appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

Installing Widgets

Some widgets may require you to install them manually; follow steps below:

> In download completion window, **Install**

- Once installation is completed, widgets appear in Widget List and Widget Icon List. Widget List includes widgets that are not yet installed.
- Up to 208 widgets appear in Widget Icon List.

Note

- Alternatively, **Main Menu ► Widget ► Widget Contents ► Download Widget ► YES**
or **Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Widget ► Download Widget ► YES** to download

Activating Widgets

From Widget List

Main Menu ▶ Widget ▶ Widget Contents

- 1 Select a widget
Follow onscreen instructions.




Widget List

Note

- Alternatively, activate a widget from **Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Widget**

In Standby

- 1  (when widgets appear in Standby)
Follow onscreen instructions.
- 2 Select a widget
Follow onscreen instructions.





■ Activate Widgets from Widget Icon List

- > After Step 1,  [Switch] → Select an icon
- To toggle sheets:  [Next]/ [Prev.]
 - To return to Standby:  [Switch]



Widget Icon List

Note

- Alternatively, press  repeatedly to move to Widget Icon List window. Press  repeatedly to return to Standby.

Widget Functions

Paste Widgets to Standby

> In Widget List/Widget Icon List,  [Menu] → *Paste on Stand-by* →  to move to target location →  [Select]

Note

- When saving widgets from microSD Card to Standby, do not remove the Card until process is complete.

Delete Widgets from Standby Display





> **Main Menu** ▶ **Widget** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Delete Content**
▶ Check Contents ▶  [Release] ▶ **YES**


Note

- Alternatively, delete widgets directly from Standby ( P.1-22).

Functions Available in Widget List



In Widget List, press  [Menu] for following operations.

Item	Operation/Description
Paste on Stand-by	 Above)
Add to Icon View	Add files to Widget Icon List
Widget Information	Show file names, sizes, etc.
Attach to message	Attach files to S! Mail/PC mail ( From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Send Ir data	Send widgets via Infrared ( P.11-3)
IC transmission	Send widgets via IC transmission ( P.11-5)

Item	Operation/Description
Move to microSD	Move widgets to microSD Card
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files →  [Menu] → Select an item

Functions Available in Widget Icon List

In Widget Icon List, press  [Menu] for following operations.

Item	Operation/Description
Move	> Select an icon → Select a target location →  [Set]
Add	Add selected widget to Widget Icon List > Select a widget
Delete	Delete widgets from Widget Icon List
Paste on Stand-by	 Left)
Widget Information	Show file name/size, etc.

News/Entertainment

S! Information Channel/Weather (Japanese)	8-2
Registering/Canceling.....	8-2
Using S! Information Channel.....	8-2
Using Weather Indicator	8-3
Option Menu Items	8-4
S! Quick News (Japanese)	8-5
Registering S! Quick News Items	8-5
Opening New Information	8-5
S! Contents Store	8-6
Downloading Content	8-6
Downloading Free Content	8-6
Blogging	8-7
Saving Blog Details.....	8-7
Posting to Blogs	8-7
Blogging Functions.....	8-8

S! Information Channel/Weather (Japanese)

Subscribe to content and periodically receive updates. Set Weather Indicator to appear on Standby.

- Transmission fees apply for updates.
- Auto download is not available overseas.

Registering/Canceling

Main Menu ► News/Entertainment ► S! Info Ch./Weather


1 Register/Cancel → YES


Handset connects to the Network.
Follow onscreen instructions.

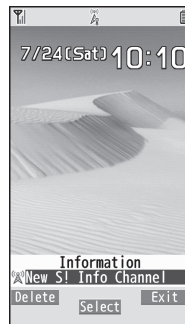
Using S! Information Channel

- Up to seven updates are saved.


Viewing New Information

When information arrives,  and Information window appear in Standby.

- Select an item
Detailed information appears.
Follow onscreen instructions.
● Option Menu Items:  P.8-4



Note

- Alternatively, retrieve information from **Main Menu** ► **News/Entertainment** ► **S! Info Ch./Weather** ► **What's New?**
- If there is unread information in both S! Quick News and S! Information Channel,  does not appear. Only Information window appears.

Manually Retrieve Information

In Information window, **Failed to download**

- Alternatively, **Main Menu** ► **News/Entertainment** ► **S! Info Ch./Weather** ► **Get Latest Contents** ► **YES**

Delete Information

- > **Main Menu** ▶ **News/Entertainment** ▶ **S! Info Ch./Weather**
 - ▶ Highlight **What's New?** ▶ [Menu] ▶ **Delete** ▶ **YES**

Viewing Previously Received Information

- Main Menu** ▶ **News/Entertainment** ▶ **S! Info Ch./Weather**

1 **History** → Select a date

for unread news and for read news appear.

Delete History

- > **Main Menu** ▶ **News/Entertainment** ▶ **S! Info Ch./Weather**
 - ▶ **History** ▶ (Highlight a history ▶) [Menu] ▶ **Delete** or **Delete All** ▶ **YES** (▶ For **Delete All**, enter Phone Password)

Using Weather Indicator

Weather Indicator for current forecast area appears in Standby.

Viewing New Information

Information window and Weather Indicator appear for weather updates.

1 Select an item

Information appears.

Follow onscreen instructions.

- Option Menu Items: P.8-4



Weather Indicator

Indicators are updated periodically.

Example: Clear, ▶ Rain later thunderstorm,

/ Cloudy with occasional snow, etc.

- See Weather Indicator List (P.19-23) for a complete list of indicators.
- Alternatively, in Standby → Select Weather Indicator → [Select]

Manually Update Weather Indicator

In Information window, *Failed to download*

- Alternatively, **Main Menu** ► **News/Entertainment**
 - **S! Info Ch./Weather** ► **Weather Indicator** ► **Manual Update**
 - **YES**

Hide Information Window

- > **Main Menu** ► **News/Entertainment** ► **S! Info Ch./Weather**
 - **Weather Indicator** ► **Missed Event Settings** ► **OFF**

Note

- Alternatively, retrieve information from **Main Menu**
 - **News/Entertainment** ► **S! Info Ch./Weather**
 - **Weather Indicator** ► **Weather**

Hiding Weather Indicator


- Main Menu** ► **News/Entertainment** ► **S! Info Ch./Weather**
 - **Weather Indicator** ► **Display Settings**

1 OFF

- When Display Settings is set to **OFF**, update is also deactivated.

Option Menu Items

Open information and press  [Menu] for these options.

Item	Operation/Description
Forward	Go to next page
Text Copy	Copy page text
Select File	View, play or save file to Data Folder (Downloading Image/Sound Files:  From Step 2 on P.15-12)
Jump in this page	Jump to top/end of page
Yahoo! Keitai	View top menu
Font Size*	Change character size
Exit viewing this	Exit content

* Linked with Font Size setting in Internet option menu.

S! Quick News (Japanese)

Add news headlines, weather forecasts, etc. via S! Quick News List to scroll across Standby Window.

- Registering or viewing S! Quick News incurs transmission fees. No fees apply for viewing ticker information. For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).
- Auto download is not available overseas.

Registering S! Quick News Items

- Register a total of up to five items for *Quick* and *General* news and one item for *Special* news.

Main Menu ▶ News/Entertainment ▶ S! Quick News
▶ S! Quick News List

1 Add News → YES

Yahoo! Keitai connects and contents list appears.

2 Select an item

Follow onscreen instructions.

Note

- Alternatively,  in Standby → Highlight ticker →  [Menu] → **S! Quick News set.** → **Delivery Info** → **S! Quick News List**

Opening New Information

Viewing New Information in Standby

When new information is received,  appears in Standby.

1 In Standby, → Select ticker


Content list appears.

2 Select information

Details appear.

Tip

Settings

- Show/Hide Only Unread Items in Standby ● Marquee Speed
- Image Download ( P.18-18)

Opening S! Quick News List

Main Menu ► News/Entertainment ► S! Quick News
► S! Quick News List

- 1 Select an item
Content list appears.
- 2 Select information
Details appear.
- 3 To connect to the Network, select a title → **YES**

■ Update Manually

> In Step1, [S!] [Menu] → *Update* or *All Update* → **YES**

■ View Summary

> In Step 1, highlight information → [S!] [Menu] → *Summary Display*

■ Delete Registered Items

> In Step 1, (highlight information →) [S!] [Menu] → *Delete* or *All Delete* → **YES** (→ For *All Delete*, enter Phone Password)

Note

- Alternatively, Main Menu ► News/Entertainment
► S! Quick News ► Settings ► Del S! Quick News List
► YES to delete all information

Tip

Settings ● Auto Update (☞ P.18-18)

S! Contents Store

Download music, games, comics, etc. via Yahoo! Keitai.

Downloading Content

Main Menu ► News/Entertainment

- 1 **S! Contents Store**
Handset connects to the Network.
Follow onscreen instructions.

Downloading Free Content

Download free Graphic Mail templates, e-book, etc.

- Transmission fees apply.

Main Menu ► News/Entertainment

- 1 **Free Contents** → Select a category
Handset connects to the Network.
Follow onscreen instructions.

Blogging

Save blog details to update or view blogs.

- Save up to 20 blog details.

Saving Blog Details

Main Menu ► News/Entertainment ► Post Blog

1  [New] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Service name	Save a blog service name > Enter a service name
Blogger address	Save a mail address for posting to a blog by mail > Enter a mail address
Mail title	Save a title to enter automatically when posting to a blog by mail > Enter a title
Yahoo! Keitai URL	Save a URL for posting to a blog from Yahoo! Keitai > Enter a mail address
PC Site Browser URL	Save a URL for posting to a blog from PC Site Browser > Enter a mail address

2  [Finish]


Posting to Blogs

Main Menu ► News/Entertainment ► Post Blog

1 **Post by Mail**

Highlight an entry →  [Post] → Compose a message ( From Step 4 on P.14-5) →  [Send]


Post from Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser

Highlight an entry →  [To site] →

By Yahoo! Keitai or **By PC Site Browser**
→ **YES**

Handset connects to the Network and website appears.
Follow onscreen instructions.

■ **Post Images to Blogs**


> While captured image is open, or from Data Folder, select an image
→  [Menu] → **Post blog** → Follow Step 1 above

- Set Auto save set ( P.18-16) in Camera menu to **OFF** to capture and post images directly.

Blogging Functions


From ► **Main Menu** ► News/Entertainment ► Post Blog

■ Edit Entries

> Highlight an entry →  [Edit] → Edit

■ Delete Entries

> Highlight an entry →  [Menu] → *Delete* →
Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Delete this	> <i>YES</i>
Delete selected	> Check entries →  [Finish] → <i>YES</i>
Delete all	> Enter Phone Password → <i>YES</i>

Music Player

Overview	9-2
Saving Music	9-2
Downloading Chaku-Uta Full®	9-3
Saving Music Files by Using SD Audio	9-3
Transferring WMA Files	9-4
Using Music Player	9-5
Playback Window Indicators	9-5
Playing Music	9-6
Playback Window Operations	9-7
Playback Operations	9-8
Chaku-Uta Full®/WMA List	9-9
Using Play List	9-10
Play List	9-11

Overview


Play music saved on handset/microSD Card.

- Play List:  P.9-10

Notes

- Files may not play due to file support issues or microSD Card status, etc.
- When playback starts with low battery, confirmation appears. When battery is low during playback, confirmation appears.
- Playback pauses for incoming calls or Alarm. Playback resumes after calls are received or Alarm sounds.

Music Illumination




- Notification Light illuminates when playback starts. When playback starts during charging, Music Illumination lights before Charging Indicator.
- To turn off light, set **Music** to **OFF** in Notification Light setting ( P.18-10).

Tip

- Use Bluetooth® Device for Listening to Music ( P.11-10)

Saving Music


Save Music to play on Music Player.


Download Chaku-Uta Full®  P.9-3	Open site link to download and save songs Supported file format: SMC, MPEG-4 (MPEG-4 AAC, MPEG-4 AAC+ (HE-AAC), Enhanced aacPlus)
Save Music via SD Audio  P.9-3	Save music CD songs via PC to microSD Card in AAC format Supported file formats: MPEG-2 AAC, MPEG-2 AAC+SBR
Save WMA files  P.9-4	Save Windows Media® Audio (WMA) files in PC to microSD Card via Windows Media® Player Supported file formats: WMA

- Some files may not play even if format is supported.

Copy Protected Files

Copy protected files may not play, be saved or forwarded.

To play a copy protected file, obtain Content Key ( P.10-5).

Confirm file expiry date or usage limitations (Music info:  P.9-8).

Saving Music Files on PCs

When saving music files for use with 942P, observe the following guidelines:

- Copyrighted Works
 - Do not infringe on third party/intellectual property rights.
 - Music files are limited to private use.
- Obtain software to convert file format.
 - Refer to websites providing software.
 - Performance of some software types is not guaranteed.

Downloading Chaku-Uta Full®

Access websites directly from Music Player to download Chaku-Uta Full® files.

- View details (price, expiry date, etc.) on source website.

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Music ► Main Folder

1 Download Music → YES

Handset connects to the Network and Download site appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions to download files.

Saving Music Files by Using SD Audio

Note

- Saving music files requires following:
 - 942P
 - microSD Card (commercial item)
 - USB cable (not included)
 - PC (Windows® XP, Windows Vista®, Windows® 7)
 - Software for PC (commercial item)
 Panasonic brand "SD-Jukebox" is recommended. Purchase SD-Jukebox from website below:
<http://club.panasonic.jp/mall/sense/> (Japanese only)
 - Music CD to save

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity ► USB Mode
 ► microSD Mode

- 1 Connect handset to a PC via USB cable
- 2 Activate SD-Jukebox on PC
- 3 Set a music CD on PC
- 4 Save music files to micro SD Card
 - See SD-Jukebox manual for usage information.
 - After saving, release USB cable from handset.

Transferring WMA Files

Transfer WMA files from PC to microSD Card via Windows Media® Player. Up to 1000 files can be saved per microSD Card.

- Use PC with Windows Media® Player installed.
- When using Windows Media® Player 10 (10.00.00.3802 or later)/11 on Windows® XP, use Windows® XP Service Pack 2 or later.
- When using Windows Vista®, use Windows Media® Player 11.
- When using Windows® 7, use Windows Media® Player 12.
- Insert microSD Card into handset before preparing USB cable (☞ P.10-19, P.11-17)

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity ► USB Mode
► MTP Mode

1 Connect handset to a PC via USB cable

Follow Windows Media® Player operations to transfer WMA files from PC to microSD Card.

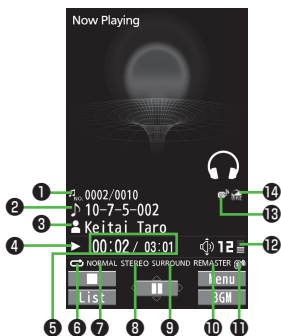
- Refer to Windows Media® Player Help for operations.
- Terminate all software applications before disconnecting USB cable.

Note

- Do not remove microSD Card while transferring files to microSD Card. Files may be damaged.
- WMA files overwrite existing files with same name in handset when copied from PC. To check file names, refer to Windows Media® Player Help.
- 942P may not recognize WMA files saved to a microSD Card on a different handset. Handset may not recognize WMA files from PCs if USB Mode is set to **MTP Mode**. Delete WMAudio and WMSYSTEM folders in My Items (MY FOLDER) on microSD Card, or format microSD Card (☞ P.10-20) via PC. Formatting microSD Card deletes all saved files.
- To play WMA files on handset, save files to WMFile (☞ P.10-22) on microSD Card and play the files from PC Movies folder in Data Folder.

Using Music Player

Playback Window Indicators




Item	Description
1	File Number/Total Number
2	Title
3	Artist
4	Status
5	Elapsed Time/Total Time
6	Play Mode Indicators
7	Equalizer Setting
8	Stereo/Monaural
9	Listening Setting
10	Remaster Setting ON
11	Bluetooth® Device Connected
12	Volume
13	Lyric
14	URL

Playing Music

Main Menu ► Videos/Music

1 Listen

Music Player menu appears.

- Last playback window appears.
 [Menu] → *Player menu* to open Music Player menu.



Music Player Menu




2 Select a category (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
All Tracks	Select files from handset & microSD Card
Play List	Select group of files saved to Play List
Artist	Select files from Artist folder
Album	Select files from Album folder
Genre	Select files from Genre folder


- ★ appears for currently/previously played Play List.

3 Select a file

Selected file plays.

- ★ appears for currently/previously played file.
- Playback Window Operations:  P.9-7
- To end playback,  []

Note

- Alternatively, play music from **Main Menu ► Tools ► Music Player**
- mp4/3gp files in Ring Songs&Tones folder can also be played in Music Player.
- Missed Call/New Message Notification Tone ( P.18-8) is unavailable during playback while handset closed.

Changing Play Mode

Main Menu ► Videos/Music

1 Listen

Music Player menu or Playback window appears.

2 [Menu] → *Play mode setting*

3 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Normal	Play all files in selected category/Play List
Play only one	Play selected file
Repeat one	Repeat selected file
Repeat all	Repeat all files in selected category/Play List
Random	Play selected category/Play List files randomly
Random play&repeat	Repeat selected category/Play List files randomly

Background Music

Listen to music while using other handset functions.

- 1 While music plays, [BGM]
- 2 To end, in Standby → **End player**

Note

- Some functions cannot operate simultaneously.
- Volume or play mode change is not available during Play Background.

Playing Chaku-Uta Full®/WMA Files as Demo

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Music

- 1 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Main Folder	View Chaku-Uta Full® list ► Select a folder • To toggle between handset/microSD Card: [Phone]/[microSD]
WMA	View WMA list

- Press [Change] to toggle display views in Chaku-Uta Full® and WMA list.
- 2 Select a Chaku-Uta Full® or WMA file
Demonstration playback starts.


Playback Window Operations

Adjust Volume	
Play Previous*	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• When playback time is over three seconds, previous file plays from beginning.
Play Next*	
Fast-rewind	Press and hold
Fast-forward	Press and hold
Pause/Resume	
Stop	
View Next Jacket/Lyric	(3)
View Previous Jacket/Lyric	(1)
Toggle Jacket/Lyric Display	(2)
Toggle Playlist/Playback Window*	[List]/[Player]
Play Background*	[BGM]
Toggle Remaster On/Off (P.9-8)	(9)
Toggle Sound Effect (Listening) Modes (P.9-8)	(8)
Toggle Equalizer Modes (P.9-8)	(7)

* Not available for playback as a demo

Playback Operations



■ Set Sound Effect

> While playing file,  [Menu] → **Sound effect** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Remaster	Compensate sound quality via earphone/Bluetooth® device, when playing compressed files > ON or OFF
Listening	Add listening effect to sound from earphone or Bluetooth® device > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Surround-sound: Reproduce natural and stereophonic sound · Natur 1 or Natur 2: Complement sound specific to earphone to reproduce natural sound · OFF: Turn off Listening setting
Equalizer	Change quality of sound from earphone or Bluetooth® device > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Normal: Reproduce normal sound · H. BASS1: Enhance low-pitched sound · H. BASS2: Enhance low-pitched sound even more · Train: Minimize sound leakage

■ Functions Available in Playback Window

> While playing file,  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Player menu	Show Music Player menu
Play mode setting	Change play mode ( P.9-6)
Sound effect	( Left)
Music info	Show song title, artist and playback time
Connect to Website	Open site link > YES
Display Image	Show jacket
Display lyric	Show lyric
Previous image/ Previous lyric	Show previous jacket or lyric
Next image/ Next lyric	Show next jacket or lyric

Chaku-Uta Full®/WMA List

From Main Menu Data Folder Music

Confirm Memory Status

> [Menu] → *Memory Status*

Functions Available in Chaku-Uta Full® Folder List

> *Main Folder* → Highlight a folder → [Menu] → Select an item
(See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Add folder	> Enter folder name
Edit folder name	> Enter folder name
Delete folder	> Enter Phone Password → YES
Memory Status	> Confirm memory status/total files

Functions Available in Chaku-Uta Full®/WMA File List

> *Main Folder* or *WMA* (→ Select a folder) → Highlight a file → [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Set as ring tone (Fullsong ring tone) ¹	Set Chaku-Uta Full® as ringtone > <i>Fullsong ring tone</i> → Select an item
Set as ring tone (Point ring tone) ¹	Set a segment of Chaku-Uta Full® as ringtone > <i>Point ring tone</i> → Select a segment → Select an item ● To confirm segment: [Play]
Music info	Show song title, artist and playback time
Move ¹	> Select a storage

Item	Operation/Description
Move to microSD ¹	Move a Chaku-Uta Full® to microSD Card
Add folder ¹	> Enter folder name
Multiple-choice ¹	Select multiple Chaku-Uta Full® files > Check Chaku-Uta Full® files → [Menu] → <i>Delete, Move</i> or <i>Send Ir data</i> → Operate selected item
Connect to Website ¹	Open site link > YES
Display image	Show jacket
Memory Status	Memory status/total number of files appears
DEL all licenses ²	Delete all WMA licenses > Enter Phone Password → YES
Delete this	> YES
Delete all	Delete all files in folder > Enter Phone Password → YES
Attach to message ¹	Attach file to S! Mail/PC Mail (From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Send Ir data ¹	(P.11-3)
IC transmission ¹	(P.11-5)
Take contents key ¹	(P.10-5)

¹ Chaku-Uta Full® files only

² WMA files only

Using Play List

Use **Play List** to organize **Data Folder** music files. Select **Music** folder files to create **Play List** links to each file in its original folder.


Creating New Play Lists

- Save up to 30 Play Lists with up to 100 songs per list.
- Music files saved on microSD Card are also savable.

Main Menu ▶ Videos/Music

1 Listen

Music Player menu or Playback window appears.

- When Playback window appears,  [Menu] → **Player menu** to show Music Player menu.

- #### 2 Play List → [Menu] → Create play list → Select a category and show file list → Check files to save to Play List → [Finish]



Play List Window

- #### 3 Enter a Play List name

Note


- Create WMA Play Lists (using Windows Media® Player) or SD Audio Play Lists (using SD-Juke Box) on PC. Maximum number of Play Lists to create and songs to save is as follows:
WMA Play Lists: 100 Play Lists; 250 songs per list
SD Audio Play Lists: 99 Play Lists; 99 songs per list

Playing Songs from Play List

Main Menu ▶ Videos/Music

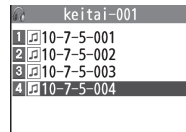
1 Listen

Music Player menu or Playback window appears.

- When Playback window appears,  [Menu] → **Player menu** to show Music Player menu.

2 Play List → Select a Play List

- To play back selected Play List from the beginning:  [Play]



Play List Contents Window

3 Select a file

Selected file plays back.

Note


- mp4/3gp files in Ring Songs&Tones folder can also be added to Play List.

Play List


From ► **Main Menu** ► **Videos/Music** ► **Listen**
(►  [Menu] ► **Player menu**) ► **Play List**






Functions Available in Play List Window

> (Highlight a Play List →)  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Player menu	Open Music Player menu
Play mode setting	Change play mode (☞ P.9-6)
Create play list	Create a new Play List (☞ P.9-10)
Copy play list	Copy Play List > Enter a Play List name
Edit pl. list name	Edit Play List name > Edit Play List name
Add	Add files to Play List > Select a category, and open a Play List → Check files to add →  [Finish]
Delete play list	> Select an item → Operate selected item

Functions Available in Play List Contents Window

> Select a Play List → (Highlight a file →)  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Player menu	Open Music Player menu
Play mode setting	Change play mode (☞ P.9-6)
Music info	Show song title, artist and playback time
Add	Add files to Play List > Select a category, and show contents window → Check files to add →  [Finish]
DEL from play list	Delete files from Play List > Select an item → Operate selected item
Order to play	> Select a file from Play List to change playing order →  to change order →  [Select] ● Repeat steps above to change order →  [Set]
Add to play list	Add files to another Play List > Add one or Add some (→ For Add some , check files →  [Finish]) → New play list or select a Play List (→ For New play list , enter Play List name)
Display image	Show jacket

Managing Files

Data Folder	10-2
Data Folder Structure	10-2
Opening Files	10-4
Viewing & Playing Files	10-4
Copy Protected Files	10-5
Options	10-6
Using/Editing Still Images	10-11
Editing Still Images	10-11
Creating Animations	10-12
Saving Still Images to Phone Book	10-13
Playing Videos	10-13
Playing Videos/PC Movies	10-13
Playing Videos Recorded on HDD Recorder	10-14
File Playback Functions	10-15
Managing Folders/Files	10-16
Managing Folders	10-16
Using Play List	10-17
microSD Card	10-18
microSD Card Installation	10-19
Format microSD Card	10-20
Viewing microSD Card Files	10-20
Handset Data Backup	10-21
PC File Transfers	10-22
microSD Card Functions	10-23
Picture Album	10-24
Viewing Still Images	10-24
Slideshow	10-27
Editing Still Images	10-28

Data Folder

Save, play and manage files downloaded from Internet, etc.

- Save still images/videos captured by Camera, downloaded data or data copied/moved from SoftBank handset to microSD Card.

Data Folder Structure

Folder		Function/Saved Data	File Format ¹	
Pictures²	Download Pictures	Connect to download site	JPEG, GIF (.gif including Interlaced GIF), GIF Pictogram Package File (.gpk), SWF (.swf Flash Animation), PNG (.png including Interlaced PNG)	
	Picture Album	Activate Picture Album		
	Main Folder	Downloaded still images, etc.		
	Camera	Still images captured by Camera, etc.		
	My Pictograms	Download My Pict.		Connect to download site
		お気に入り		Downloaded pictograms, etc.
		顔文字, 装飾, etc.		Preinstalled pictograms
	Mail Art	Mail Art (download)		Connect to download site
	Pre-installed			Preinstalled still images
	Handwriting	Handwt Photo/Memo		Photos/memos saved as JPEG images
Template		Background images for Handwriting Photo/Memo		
Handwriting Diary		Diaries saved as JPEG images		
Original Animation		Display still images continuously		
Ring Songs&Tones²	DL Ring Songs&Tones	Connect to download site	SMF, SP-MIDI, AMR, SMAF and MPEG-4 formatted files (.mid, .midi, .amr, .mmf, .3gp, .mp4)	
	Main Folder	Downloaded ring songs/tones, etc.		
	Pre-installed	Preinstalled ring songs/tones		
	Voice Announce	Data recorded by Voice Announce		
	Play List	Play back Play List		
S! Appli²	Download S! Appli	Connect to download site	—	
Widget²	Download Widget	Connect to download site	WGT (.wgt), SWGT (.swgt)	
Music	Main Folder ²	Download Music	Connect to download site	
		Initial Folder	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full [®]	
	WMA ³		WMA Files transferred from PC	

Folder		Function/Saved Data	File Format ¹
Videos²	Download Videos	Connect to download site	MP4 (including .mp4, .3gp, SDV), ASF (.asf)
	Main Folder	Downloaded video files, etc.	
	Camera	Video files recorded by Camera	
	Pre-installed	Preinstalled video files	
	BD/DVD Recorder ³	Videos transferred from HDD Recorder	
	Play List	Play back Play List	
PC Movies	Position Memory	Play back video files from saved resume position	WMA (.wma), WMV (.wmv), ASF (.asf)
	microSD ³	PC movie files saved from PCs	
	Play History	Select a file from playback history	
TV	Image	Still images recorded by Digital TV	JPEG (.jpg)
	Video ³	Programs recorded on handset	TOD (.tod), MOI (.moi), MAI (.mai), PGI (.pgi)
	Position Memory	Play back video files from saved resume position	
Lifestyle-Appli	Download	Connect to download site (Osaifu-Keitai®: ☞ P.13-9)	—
Books²	Download Books	Connect to download site	CCF (.ccf), XMDF (.zbf, .zbs), BMO (.bmo)
Customized Screen²	Customized Screen	Connect to download site	CUSR (.xcfs)
Templates	Download Templates	Connect to download site	—
Font	Download Font	Connect to download site	MTF (.mtf)
	Main Folder	Downloaded fonts	
	Pre-installed	Pre-installed fonts	
Other Documents²	Main Folder	Incompatible files attached to mail ⁴	—

¹ Some copy protected files have extensions different from above.

² When microSD Card is installed, press  [microSD] in folder list to view data saved in microSD Card.

³ Available only when microSD Card is inserted.

⁴ Some attachment files cannot be saved in Other Documents.

Opening Files

Viewing & Playing Files

Main Menu ► Data Folder

1 Select a folder

- In folder list, press [Phone]/ [microSD] to toggle handset folder and microSD Card folder.



Pictures Folder

2 Select a folder → Select a file File appears/plays.

- To toggle list/thumbnail view: [Change]



Still Image List Window

When Shortcut to a Download Site is Selected

Handset connects to a download site on Internet.

■ Enlarge Still Images

> Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Pictures ► Select a folder ► Select a file ► [Menu] ► Display size ► Fit in display









■ Operations while Playing Files from Ring Songs&Tones

Stop	[Stop]
Volume	
Attach to messages	[]

Copy Protected Files

Playing/forwarding/saving may be restricted and Content Key may be required for usage.

If Content Key is expired, obtain a new Key to use file.

-  or  (Silver) appears for copy protected files requiring Content Keys.  files are accessible.  files are inaccessible. In Thumbnail view,  appears for expired files ( appears for Books file).
- When deleting  files, or selecting all/multiple files in a folder to delete, confirmation appears asking whether to delete corresponding Content Key. Other files requiring same Content Key may become unusable.
- See File Properties to confirm restrictions such as expiry term or usage limitation (Options:  P.10-6)
- 942P holds up to 1000 Content Keys. Multiple Keys may be required to use a file.
- Interrupted playback (by incoming calls or Alarm) of copy protected WMA files with limited usage in Data Folder is also counted as one usage.


Using Copy Protected Files

- Files downloaded on handset cannot be used on PCs.
- Network setting may be required for usage.
- File usage may require insertion of USIM Card in use at time of download.
- When set as wallpaper or ringtone, settings may return to defaults if license has expired or different USIM Card is inserted.
- Limited use files cannot be set as wallpaper or ringtone.

Obtaining Content Key

If Content Key is expired, a message appears when the file is opened. To obtain a new Key, select **YES**. Handset connects to Content Key site.

Note

- Alternatively, obtain Content Key as follows: Highlight a file →  [Menu] → **Take contents key** → **YES**
- Depending on contents, some Content Keys may not be obtained from websites even when warning for expired contents appears.
- When 1000 Content Keys have been saved, a message appears. Delete old Keys; otherwise downloads may fail (Transmission fees apply).

Tip








- Back Up Content Key ( P.10-24)



Options


Highlight a file in Data Folder →  [Menu] for the following operations.

- Some functions may not be available depending on files.

Pictures





Item	Operation/Description
Edit picture	Edit files ( P.10-11)
Display picture	Open files
Set display*	Set as wallpaper, Phone Book image, Menu Icons, etc. > Select an item ● ★ appears for item.
Picture info	Show file name, file size, etc.
Attach to message	Attach files to S! Mail/PC Mail ( From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Graphic mail	Add selected files to Graphic Mail ( P.14-10)
Post blog	Post file on a blog ( P.8-7)
Send Ir data	Send files via Infrared ( P.11-3)
IC transmission	Send files via IC transmission ( P.11-5)
Add shortcut icon	Create shortcuts ( P.1-21)
Copy to microSD	Copy files to microSD Card
Move to microSD	Move files to microSD Card
Positioning	Set where to paste files in Standby > Select a position

Item	Operation/Description
Edit file name	Edit file names
Move	Move files to other folders
Slideshow	Show files in a folder continuously. Select display speed > Normal or Slow
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files to use →  [Menu] → Select an item
Memory Status	Show memory information
Sort	Change display order of files > Select an order
Pictures/ File names	Toggle list views ● Alternatively,  [Change] to toggle
Take contents key	Connect to site for Content Key

* Before setting a file as Video Call related item (except for Incoming/ Outgoing Video Calls), set Select Images ( P.18-12) to **Original**.

- If incoming calls arrive or handset is turned off while My Pictograms package file (.gpk) is being uncompressed, some pictograms in package file may not open. Retry uncompressing.

Tip

- Enlarge Still Images ( P.10-4)
- Editing Still Images ( P.10-11)
- Creating Animations ( P.10-12)
- Saving Still Images to Phone Book ( P.10-13)

■ Ring Songs&Tones

Item	Operation/Description
Edit file name	Edit file names
Play melody	Play back files
Set as ring tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > Select a ringtone ● ★ appears for item.
Add shortcut icon	Create shortcuts (☞ P.1-21)
Attach to message	Attach files to S! Mail/PC Mail (☞ From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Send Ir data	Send files via Infrared (☞ P.11-3)
IC transmission	Send files via IC transmission (☞ P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy files to microSD Card
Song-Tone info	Show titles, file names, etc.
Memory Status	Show memory information
Delete	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > Select an item · Delete this → YES · Delete select → Check files to delete → ☑ [Finish] → YES · Delete all → Enter Phone Password → YES
Sort	Change display order of files > Select an order
Move	Move files to other folders
Move to microSD	Move files to microSD Card
Take contents key	Connect to site for Content Key

■ S! Appli/Lifestyle-Appli

Item	Operation/Description
Start	Activate S! Appli or Lifestyle-Appli
Security level	Set security level (☞ P.16-4)
S! Appli info	Show file names, file sizes, etc.
Add shortcut icon	Create shortcuts (☞ P.1-21)
Move to microSD	Move files to microSD Card (Lifestyle-Appli cannot be moved)
Delete	Delete a file > YES

■ Widget

- See "Functions Available in Widget List" (☞ P.7-4)

■ Music

- See "Functions Available in Chaku-Uta Full®/WMA File List" (☞ P.9-9)

Videos

Item	Operation/Description
Register	Set as ringtones, Standby Display or Start-up display > Select an item
Video info	Show titles, file names, etc.
Attach to message	Attach files to S! Mail/PC Mail (☞ P.14-4)
Post blog	Post file on a blog (☞ P.8-7)
Send Ir data	Send files via Infrared (☞ P.11-3)
IC transmission	Send files via IC transmission (☞ P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy files to microSD Card
Move to microSD	Move files to microSD Card
Move	Move files to other folders
Add shortcut icon	Create shortcuts (☞ P.1-21)
Edit file name	Edit file names
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files to use → ☒ [Menu] → Select an item
Memory Status	Show memory information
Sort	Change display order of files > Select an order

Item	Operation/Description
Listing	Change list view > Title or Title + Image ● To toggle views: ☑ [Change]
Take contents key	Connect to site for Content Key

PC Movies

Item	Operation/Description
Contents info	Show titles, file names, etc.
Move	Move files to other folders
Copy	Copy files to other folders
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files to use → ☒ [Menu] → Select an item
Comment view	Show descriptions
Memory Status	Show memory information
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES

TV



- See Pictures folder for still images.

Item	Operation/Description
Edit title	Edit titles
Video info	Show titles, channel names, etc.
Add shortcut icon	Create shortcuts (📌 P.1-21)
Delete	> Select an item · Delete this → YES · Delete selected → Check files to delete → 📧[Finish] → YES · Delete all → Enter Phone Password → YES
Memory Status	Show memory information
Listing	Change list view > Title or Title + Image ● To toggle views: 📺[Change]


Books

Item	Operation/Description
Play	Play back files
Connect to Website	Open site link
Book info	Show file names, file sizes, etc.
Copy to microSD	Copy files to microSD Card
Move to microSD	Move files to microSD Card
Add folder	Add folders
Edit file name	Edit file names
Move	Move files to other folders
Take contents key	Connect to site for Content Key
Delete	Delete files > YES



■ Customized Screen

Item	Operation/Description
Preview	Preview files
Collective Setting	Set Customized Screen all at once > YES
File info	Show titles, file names, etc.
Copy to microSD	Copy files to microSD Card
Move to microSD	Move files to microSD Card
Edit file name	Edit file names
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files to use →  [Menu] → Select an item
Memory Status	Show memory information
Sort	Change display order of files > Select an order
Listing	Change list view > Title or Image ● To toggle views:  [Change]
Take contents key	Connect to site for Content Key
Connect to Website	Open site link

■ Templates

Item	Operation/Description
Compose S! Mail	Load selected template to create Graphic Mail (📧 Step 2 to 4 on P. 14-4, from Step 2 on P.14-6)
Edit title	Edit titles
Template info	Show title and file size
Delete this	> YES
Delete selected	> Check files to delete →  [Finish] → YES
Delete All	> Enter Phone Password → YES

■ Font

Item	Operation/Description
Set	Apply selected font
File info	Show file names, file sizes, etc.
Edit title	Edit titles
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files to use →  [Menu] → Select an item
Memory Status	Show memory information
Sort	Change display order of files > Select an order
Listing	Change list view > Title or Image ● To toggle views:  [Change]

Other Documents

Item	Operation/Description
File info	Show file names, file sizes, etc.
Attach to message	Attach files to S! Mail/PC Mail (✉ From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Copy to microSD	Copy files to microSD Card
Edit file name	Edit file names
Move	Move files to other folders
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files to use → [Menu] → Select an item
Memory Status	Show memory information
Sort	Change display order of files > Select an order

Note

- Titles of mp4/3gp Ring Songs&Tones files and Videos/Music/Customized Screen files appear in respective lists. Files without titles appear with file names (created when files are saved to handset). Titles cannot be changed; edited file names may not appear in lists.

Using/Editing Still Images














Editing Still Images

- Edit features are not available for all file types.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Pictures



- 1 Select a folder → Select a file → [Menu] → **Edit picture**
- 2 [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Marker stamp	> Select a stamp → to move stamp → [Put] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Following options are available when positioning a stamp: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To rotate or scale up/down: [Menu] → Select an item • To start over: [Cancel] • To add: [Add]
Frame	> Select a frame <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To rotate 180 degrees: [Menu] → 180° rotation • To change frame: • To return to frame list: [Cancel]
Character stamp	> Enter text → to move text → [Put] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To change content/color/font/size: When positioning stamp, [Menu] → Select an item → Operate selected item • To start over: [Cancel] after positioning

Item	Operation/Description
Fit in screen	Change image size to Stand-by(480x854) > YES
Change size	> Select a size ● To start over:  [Cancel]
Trim away	> Specify a size →  to specify area →  [Set] ● To start over:  [Cancel]
Retouch	> Select an item ● To start over:  [Cancel]
Rotate	> 90° to right, 90° to left or 180° ● To start over:  [Cancel]
Brightness	>  to adjust brightness
Attach to message ^{1,2}	Attach edited file to S! Mail/PC Mail >  [Set] → Compose message ( From Step 2 on P.14-4) ● Alternatively,  [] to attach image to a message
Post blog ^{1,2}	Post on a blog >  [Set] → Post on a blog ( P.8-7)
Save ¹	Overwrite/rename to save edited files

¹ Available after other editing operations.

² File is automatically saved.

3  [Set] →  [Save]

4 **YES** (Overwrite) or **NO** (Save as)

Creating Animations

Saving Original Animation


Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Pictures ► Original Animation


1 <New> → <1st> to <20th>

2 Select a folder → Select a file
● Repeat Step 2.

3  [Finish]

Functions Available in Original Animation List

In Original Animation list, press  [Menu] for following operations.

Item	Operation/Description
Edit title	Edit titles
Org. animation	Add more files to an Original Animation ( Above)
Display picture	Play back an Original Animation ● Alternatively, select an Original Animation from list to play back.
Set display	Set an Original Animation as Standby display, etc. > Select an item
Picture info	View item set for Set display
Release animation	Cancel a saved Original Animation > YES

Saving Still Images to Phone Book

- Savable sizes:
 - Stand-by(480x854) or smaller in JPEG or GIF format (up to 300 KB)
 - VGA(640x480) or smaller in PNG format
- Save images to up to 100 Phone Book entries.
- Still images cannot be saved to USIM Card Phone Book entries.

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Pictures

- 1 Select a folder → Select a file → [Menu] → **Set display** → **Phone Book**
- 2 **New Entry**
New → Enter details (→ From Step 2 on P.4-3) → [Finish]
Add to Existing Entry
Add → Select entry → [Select] → [Finish] → **YES**

Playing Videos

Playing Videos/PC Movies

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 **Play Videos**
Videos → Select a folder → Select a file
Play PC Movies
PC Movies → **microSD** → Select a file
 - To toggle file list views: [Change]

■ Playback Operations

- Some operations are not available depending on files.
- Operation descriptions are based on Normal Position.

Adjust Volume	
Play Previous	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● When three seconds into the chapter, playback returns to beginning of current chapter.
Play Next	
Fast-rewind ¹	Press and hold
Fast-forward ¹	Press and hold
Playback Position ²	repeatedly
Change Speed	[/ /]
Mute/Resume	[/]
Pause/Resume	[/]

Play Frame by Frame¹	While pausing, [Frame] ● Play back frame by frame.
Toggle Views	 ● Toggle: Portrait View → Landscape View (fit to Display size) → Full-size Landscape View ²
Toggle Remaster On/Off (👉 P.9-8)	
Toggle Sound Effect (Listening) Modes (👉 P.9-8)	
Toggle Equalizer Modes (👉 P.9-8)	

¹ Videos only

² May be unavailable depending on image size.

Playing Videos Recorded on HDD Recorder

Transfer programs recorded on HDD recorder to microSD Card via USB cable (not included) for playback on handset.

- Set USB Mode (👉 P.11-17) to **microSD Mode** before connecting handset to HDD recorder.
- For details about transferring videos, see HDD recorder manuals.
- Use Earphone Microphone for stereo sound. Use a Bluetooth® device for wireless audio output (👉 P.11-10).

Main Menu ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **Videos** ▶ **BD/DVD Recorder**

- 1 Select a file

Functions Available in Video Window

- Some functions may be unavailable depending on the file type.
- Operation descriptions are based on Portrait View.

Adjust Volume	
Play Previous Chapter	 ● When three seconds into the chapter, playback returns to beginning of current chapter.
Play Next Chapter	
Skip (Forward)	While playing/pausing, press and hold ● Skip about 30 seconds forward.
Skip (Rewind)	While playing/pausing, press and hold ● Skip about 10 seconds backward.
Fast-rewind	 ● To play back: [▶] ● Play back at normal speed during 10x fast-forward. Play back at 10x speed during 30x fast-forward.
Fast-forward	 ● To play back: [▶] ● Play back at normal speed during 10x fast-rewind. Play back at 10x speed during 30x fast-rewind.
Playback Position	repeatedly
Mute/Resume	[🔊 / 🔇]
Pause/Resume	[⏸ / ▶]
Toggle Views	 ● Toggle: Portrait View → Landscape View (fit to Display size) → Full-size Landscape View

Toggle Remaster On/Off (👉 P.9-8)	9
Toggle Sound Effect (Listening) Modes (👉 P.9-8)	8
Toggle Equalizer Modes (👉 P.9-8)	7

File Playback Functions

Play Back from a Resume Position

Resume playback (videos/PC Movies) from a saved position.

> **Main Menu** ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **Videos** or **PC Movies**

▶ **Position Memory** ▶ Select an item

- Save a resume position: 👉 Right
- **Marker to resume** is a resume position automatically saved when a call arrives, alarm goes off, battery runs low, or playback is terminated.

Play Back from Play History (PC Movies Only)

> **Main Menu** ▶ **Data folder** ▶ **PC Movies** ▶ **Play History**

▶ Select a record

Functions Available in Video/PC Movie Playback Window

- Some operations are not available depending on files.

> While playback is paused, [XZ][Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Normal play ¹	Play at normal speed
Slow ¹	Play at slow speed
Quick View (1.25x) ¹	Play 1.25 times faster than normal
Quick View(2x) ¹	Play at double speed
Fast ²	Forward
Rewind ²	Rewind
Stop	Return to Videos/PC Movies List window
Position to play	Start playback from specified point > [📄] to highlight a play point → [📄][Set]
Connect to Website ¹	Open site link > YES
Sound effect	Remaster, Listening or Equalizer (👉 P.9-8)
Contents info ²	Show title, file name, etc.
Position memory	Save resume position > Select a resume position ● To play back from a saved position: 👉 Left
Mail/blog ¹	Attach file to a message to send or post on a blog > Select an item · Attach to message (👉 From Step 2 on P.14-4) · Post blog (👉 Step 1 on P.8-7)

Item	Operation/Description
Register (Ringtones)¹	Set as ringtone > Ringtones → Select a type ● ★ appears for item set as ringtone.
Register (Stand-by Display/ Start-up Window)¹	Save a file as Standby Display or Start-up Window > Select an item → YES
Video info¹	Show title, file name, etc.
Send Ir data¹	Send file via Infrared (📶 P.11-3)
IC transmission¹	Send file via IC transmission (📶 P.11-5)
Add shortcut icon¹	Create a shortcut (📌 P.1-21)
Description²	Show file information > The words view or Description view
Copy URL²	Copy URL
Display size	Select a display size > Actual size or Fit in display
Change to full¹	Toggle: Portrait View → Landscape View (fit to Display size) → Full-size Landscape View ³ ● To toggle views: 📺

¹ Video files only² PC movie files only³ May be unavailable depending on image size.

Managing Folders/Files

Managing Folders

The following operations are available in Pictures, Ring Songs&Tones, Music, Videos, Books and Other Documents.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder →  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Add folder	Create user folders
Edit folder name	Edit user folder names
Delete folder	Delete a user folder > Enter Phone Password → YES → YES
Folder security¹	Hide files in folder unless Phone Password is entered > Enter Phone Password → YES 🔒 appears for folder. ● To cancel: Repeat the step
Delete all image²	> Enter Phone Password → YES → YES
Edit Play List³	Edit Play Lists
Release Play List³	Cancel edited Play Lists > YES

Item	Operation/Description
Select storage ⁴	Specify folders on microSD Card to save files to > YES <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Folders cannot be specified when saving Books files.
Memory Status ⁵	View memory capacity/number of saved files

¹ Pictures/Videos folders only

² Pictures folder only

³ Play List folder in Ring Songs&Tones folder only

⁴ microSD Card only

⁵ Music folder only

Using Play List

Use Play List to organize Data Folder Ring Songs&Tones/ Videos files.

Select Ring Songs&Tones, Music or Videos folder files to create Play List links to each file in its original folder.

Creating Ring Songs&Tones Play Lists

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Ring Songs&Tones

1 Highlight *Play List* →  [Menu] → *Edit Play List*

2 Select a number → Select a folder → Select a file

- Repeat Step 2.

3  [Finish]

■ Play Back Play List


> Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Ring Songs&Tones ▶ Play List

● Files are played back in the saved order.

■ Delete a File

> After Step 1, select a file → *Release this*

■ Delete All Files

> In Step 1,  [Menu] → *Release Play List* → **YES**

Note

● mp4/3gp files cannot be added to Play List except in Music Player Play List.

Creating Video Play Lists

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Videos ► Play List

- 1 Select a Play List
- 2 Select a number → Select a folder → Select a file
 - Repeat Step 2.


3  [Finish]

■ Play Back Play Lists




> Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Videos ► Play List ► Highlight a Play List →  [Play]

- Files are played back in the saved order.


■ Delete Files

> After Step 1, (highlight a file →)  [Menu] → *Delete this* or *DEL all from list* → YES

■ Change Order

> After Step 1,  [Menu] → *Oder to play* → Select a file → Select a target →  [Finish] →  [Finish]

microSD Card

- 942P is compatible with up to 2 GB commercial microSD Cards and up to 16 GB commercial microSDHC Cards (as of June 2010).
For information on memory card compatibility, visit the website below (Japanese). Note that microSD Cards not listed on the website may not function properly.
 - From Yahoo! Keitai
P-egg (as of June 2010)
Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► Bookmarks
► Panasonic メーカーサイト (P-egg)
 - From PC
<http://panasonic.jp/mobile/>
Not all operations are guaranteed by the microSD/microSDHC Cards listed.
- Format new microSD/microSDHC Cards for use with handset ( P.10-20).

Note

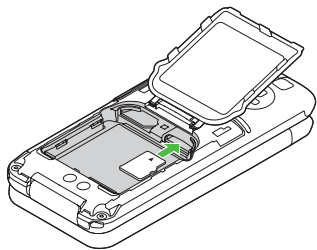
- SoftBank is not liable for damages from accidental loss/alteration of microSD Card information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- microSD Card has no write protect feature; there is a risk of accidental erasure/overwriting of files.
- Accessing data may take time when data size is large.

microSD Card Installation

- Turn off handset before inserting/removing microSD Card. (Remove Battery Cover: P.xxiv/Battery Installation: P.1-13)

Inserting

- 1 Insert microSD Card until it clicks



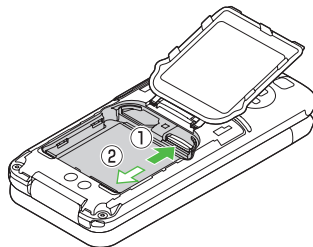
microSD Card Check

When microSD Card is installed correctly, appears. If appears, microSD Card cannot be used. Remove microSD Card from handset, and re-insert it. If does not disappear, execute Check microSD (P.10-23) or format microSD Card (P.10-20).

- Display Indicator: P.1-10

Removing

- 1 Push microSD Card in
 - microSD Card pops out with a light push.




Note

- Do not turn off handset or remove battery/microSD Card when appears. microSD Card may be damaged or files lost.
- microSD Card may pop out when inserting/removing it.

Format microSD Card

- Formatting microSD Card deletes all saved files/data.

Main Menu ► Tools ► microSD Backup

- 1  [Menu] → *microSD format*
- 2 Enter Phone Password → **YES**

Note

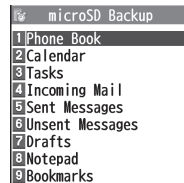
- Do not turn handset power off or remove microSD Card or battery while formatting; may damage handset or microSD Card.
- microSD Cards formatted on other devices may not be used. Format microSD Card on 942P before use.
- Handset cannot format incompatible microSD Cards.
- If format fails, turn power off and remove microSD Card from handset. Reinsert microSD Card and format it again.

Viewing microSD Card Files

View Phone Book entries, Calendar events, Tasks, mail messages, Notepads and Bookmarks backed up on microSD Card.

Main Menu ► Tools ► microSD Backup

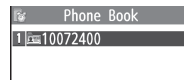
- 1 Select a category



Category List

- 2 Select a file

Backup date appears as file name.



File List

- 3 Select a data



Data List



Detailed Data

Note

- If messages on microSD Card do not appear correctly, copy messages to handset (☞ P.10-21) and execute Charset Conversion (☞ P.14-24).

Handset Data Backup

Back up handset data (Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Messages, Notepad, Bookmarks, Content Keys) to microSD Card; restore handset data after accidental loss/alteration.

- Back up Content Key: P.10-24

Backing up to microSD Card

Main Menu ► Tools ► microSD Backup

- 1 Highlight a category → [Menu] → **Copy to microSD** (→ For **Bookmarks**, select an item)
- 2 Enter Phone Password → **YES**
All files of selected category are backed up to microSD Card.

One File Backup

> Open a file → [Menu] → **Copy to microSD** → **YES**

Restoring from microSD Card

Main Menu ► Tools ► microSD Backup

- 1 Select a category

2 Restore One Item

Select a file → Highlight an item → [Menu] → **Add to phone**

Restore One File

Highlight a file → [Menu] → **Add to phone** or **Overwrite to phone** → Enter Phone Password

Restore All Files

[Menu] → **Add all to phone** or **Overwr. all to ph.** → Enter Phone Password

3 YES

Note

- Note that **Overwrite to phone** or **Overwr. all to ph.** erases all files of same category on handset.
- Video files of 100 MB or larger cannot be moved from microSD Card to handset.
- Files of 10 MB or larger except for Videos/Books files (.bmo) cannot be moved/copied from microSD Card to handset.
- Data backed up in other SoftBank handsets may not be restored in 942P depending on type and size.

Tip

- Delete Items from microSD Card ● View microSD Card Memory Capacity (P.10-23)

PC File Transfers

Folder Structure

Files moved or copied from handset to microSD Card are organized as follows:

- Save files in folders by file type.

DCIM		
● Still images saved to microSD Card		
PRIVATE		
MYFOLDER		
Utility		
Calendar	Calendar.BCK	Calendar Backup files
Contacts	Contacts.BCK	Phone Book Backup files
Rights		Content Key Backup files
Tasks	Tasks.BCK	Tasks Backup files
Memo	Memo.BCK	Notepad Backup files
Mail		
Drafts	Drafts.BCK	Drafts Backup files
Inbox	Inbox.BCK	Incoming Mail Backup files
Outbox	Outbox.BCK	Unsent Messages Backup files
Sent Messages	Sent Messages.BCK	Sent Messages Backup files
My Items		
Book		E-comics, etc.
Bookmarks	Bookmarks.BCK	Bookmarks Backup files
Flash(R)		Flash® files

Games and More	S! Appli
Music	Sound files with .3gp, .mp4, .smc
Other Documents	Other files
Pictograms	My Pictograms
Pictures	Still images moved/copied from handset to Main Folder in microSD Card
Sounds & Ringtones	Sound files of: up to 10 MB with .3gp, .mp4, up to 300 KB with .mid, .midi, .amr
Videos	Videos moved/copied from handset to Main Folder in microSD Card
Widget	Widget contents
WMFile*	PC movie files saved from PC to microSD Card
SD_VIDEO	
● Videos saved to microSD Card	
● Videos recorded from Digital TV or transferred from HDD recorder.	

- Some copy protected files have extensions different from above.
- When moving/copying videos from microSD Card to handset, file format or file size may change.

* If WMFile does not appear in My Items (MYFOLDER), create and save a folder titled WMFile.


Using Data on microSD Card

With a microSD Card inserted, connect handset with a PC via USB cable (not included) to read/write data from/onto microSD Card.

Following equipment is required:

- Connector Cable: USB cable
- PC: PC with USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev 1.1/2.0 compliant)
- Compatible Operating Systems: Windows® XP, Windows Vista®, Windows® 7 (Japanese version in each)

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity ▶ USB Mode ▶ microSD Mode

- 1 Connect handset to PC via USB cable while handset is on
 - PC recognizes microSD Card.
 -  appears in Standby (handset).

Note

- Even if incoming call arrives, reading/writing data continues during calls. After calls, check indicators on PC to see if reading/writing is complete.
- File names saved in microSD Card may not properly appear if changed on PC.

microSD Card Functions

■ Restore microSD Card items (Check microSD)

Use Check microSD to repair microSD Card data errors.

> **Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ microSD Backup ▶  [Menu] ▶ Check microSD ▶ YES**

- Do not turn handset power off or remove microSD Card or battery while formatting; may damage handset or microSD Card.
- It may take 30 seconds or longer to complete Check microSD depending on data volume on microSD Card.
- Handset cannot check incompatible or unformatted microSD Cards.
- Handset may delete files and folders that fail to be restored.

■ Delete Items from microSD Card

> **Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ microSD Backup ▶ Select a category ▶ (Highlight a file ▶  [Menu] ▶ Delete this or Delete all (▶ For Delete all, enter Phone Password) ▶ YES**

- Content Key cannot be deleted.

■ View microSD Card Memory Capacity

> **Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ microSD Backup ▶  [Menu] ▶ microSD info**

■ Back Up Content Key

Copy Content Keys to microSD Card from handset or to handset from microSD Card.

> **Main Menu** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security** ▶ **Content Key**

▶ **Copy to microSD** or **Copy from microSD** ▶ Enter Phone Password


- Content Keys with expiration dates or usage limits cannot be backed up.
- USIM Card inserted when Content Keys were moved to microSD Card must be inserted to move Content Keys from microSD Card.
- Some applications are not compatible with handset. Only Content Keys for compatible applications are backed up. Also, note that some keys are moved to microSD Card when backed up. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information for more information (☎ P.19-33).
- Backing up Content Keys overwrites previously saved Content Key backup.

Picture Album

View still images in **Pictures** folder (**Data Folder**) using **Picture Album**. Slideshow is also available.

- Only JPEG files are supported by Picture Album.
- Operation descriptions are based on Viewer Position.

Viewing Still Images

1  tab → **Data Folder** or **Camera** → **Pict. Album**

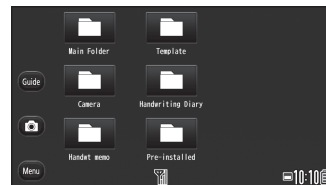
Folder list appears.

2 Tap a folder

File list appears.

3 Tap a file

File image appears.



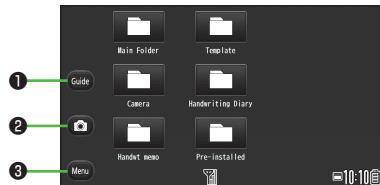
Folder List

Note

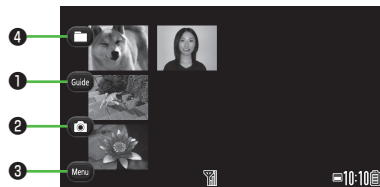
- In Normal Position, activate Picture Album from **Main Menu** ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **Pictures** ▶ **Picture Album** or **Main Menu** ▶ **Camera** ▶ **Picture Album**
- When an S! Appli is paused, Picture Album cannot be activated.
- Copy protected files are not viewable.
- Connect handset to a TV (☎ P.11-18) and view images using Picture Album.

Picture Album Functions

Tap icons to access functions. Follow onscreen instructions.



Folder List



File List

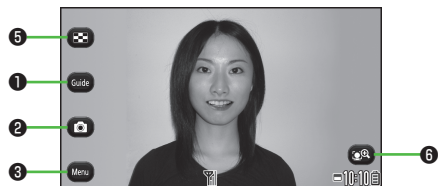





Image Window

	Item	Description
①	Guide	View operating instructions
②	Activate Camera-Touch ¹	Activate Camera in Digicam mode
③	Menu	View function menu
④	Folder List	View folder list
⑤	File List	View file list
⑥	Face Zoom ²	Zoom in on faces <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When more than one face is detected, tap icon to zoom in on another face.

¹ Available only when Picture Album is activated by  in Digicam mode.



² Available only when faces are detected

Note

- Each tap in Image window toggles indicators on/off. (In Normal Position, press  [Icon].)
- Face Zoom may not be available depending on still image. Faces detected by Beauty plus ( P.10-29) may not correspond with those detected by Face zoom.

■ From Folder/File List Window


In folder/file list, tap  for following operations. Follow onscreen instructions.






Item	Operation/Description
Slideshow	Start slideshow ( P.10-27)
Kisekae ¹	Change theme for folder list
Categorize ²	Categorize still images ( Right)

¹ Folder list only

² File list only

■ From Image Window

In Image Window, tap  for following functions. Follow onscreen instructions.

Item	Operation/Description
Slideshow	Start slideshow ( P.10-27)
Zoom	Enlarge to 200% ( P.10-27)
Rotate	Each press rotates image 90° clockwise
ATCHtoMail	Send file via S! Mail ( From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Post blog	Post file to a blog ( P.8-7)
Effect	Set slideshow effects
Delete	Delete file
Edit picture	Edit still images ( P.10-28)
Set display	Set as wallpaper

Note

- Some files may not appear right side up when posted to a blog.

■ Categorize Still Images

Still images captured in Digicam mode are categorized according to file properties.

> In file list, tap  → **Categorize** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Date	Sort still images into folders by date <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When more than 12 images captured on the same day exist, files are sorted by time.
Scene	Show still images categorized by specified content > Select a category
Color	Show still images categorized by specified color > Select a color
AutoShutter	Show still images categorized by specified Auto shutter setting > Select an item

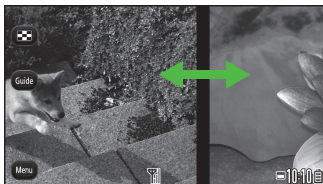
- To undo: 

Note

- File properties on still images cannot be changed and still images with no file properties cannot be categorized.
- It may take some time for process depending on number of files. Some still images may not be categorized.
- When editing a categorized still image, confirmation appears asking whether to delete category information. Edited still images cannot be categorized.
- Files may not be categorized by properties.

Scroll Page/Screen

- Slide left/right to scroll files in file list.
- Slide left/right to scroll images in Image window.



Zoom

> In Image window, **Menu** → **Zoom** → Adjust Slide Lever



- To cancel: **CLR**

Note

- In Normal Position, press **[Zoom]** → **#**/***** to zoom in/out Image window. To undo, press **[Return]**.

Slideshow

View files in succession.

- 1 **Grid** tab → **Data Folder** or **Camera** → **Pict. Album**
- 2 **View All Images**
Menu → **Slideshow**

View Selected Folder

Select a folder → **Menu** → **Slideshow**
Slideshow starts.

Slideshow Operations

Tap **Display** during slideshow to pause and open menu. Follow onscreen instructions.



Change Slideshow Settings

Tap **Settings** while Slideshow is paused to access the following. Follow onscreen instructions.

Item	Operation/Description
Time	Set slide display time
Effect	Set transition effects
Face zoom	Zoom in on faces
Random	Shuffle files
Repeat	Repeat slideshow

Note

- Face zoom may not be available depending on still image. Faces detected by Beauty plus (👉 P.10-29) may not correspond with those detected by Face zoom.

Editing Still Images

- 1 🗃️ tab → **Data Folder** or **Camera** → **Pict. Album**
- 2 Select a folder → Select a file
- 3 🍷 → **Edit picture** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
S-resolution	<p>> Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Actual size: Enhance image quality without affecting file size. Select from between QCIF(144x176) and 3M(1536x2048). Tap Compare / Return to compare to original image. · Stand-by: Enlarge images without affecting image quality and aspect ratio. Select from between QCIF(144x176) and less than VGA(480x640). Selected image can be enlarged up to Stand-by(480x854) size. · Print: Enlarge images without affecting file size, image quality and aspect ratio. Select from between VGA(480x640) and less than 2M(1200x1600). Selected image can be enlarged up to 1200x1920 pixels.

Item	Operation/Description
Shade correct.	Compensate for dark images from QCIF(144x176) to 13M(3120x4160). Images larger than 3M(1536x2048) are reduced to 3M(1536x2048) or less.
Beauty plus	<p>Detects up to five faces for photo correction. Available for images up to 13M(3120x4160), but images larger than Stand-by(480x854) are reduced to Stand-by(480x854) or less.</p> <p>> Select face</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When more than one face is detected: Next Face → Select another face ● To compare to original image: Compare / Return
Handwt memo	Add pictures/text/decoration (☞ P.3-11). Available for images up to 13M(3120x4160), but images larger than Stand-by(480x854) are reduced to Stand-by(480x854) or less.

4 **Save** → **OK**

- To exit without saving: **Cancel**

Note

- If you rotate image in Picture Album, the image returns to original orientation for editing. However, if image is larger in rotated view, image does not return to original orientation and the edited image is saved as is.

10

Managing Files

Connectivity

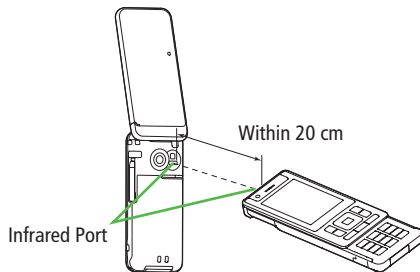
Infrared	11-2
Before Using Infrared	11-2
One/Multiple File Transfer	11-3
All File Transfers	11-3
IC Transmission	11-4
One File Transfer.....	11-5
All File Transfers	11-5
Bluetooth®	11-6
Before Using Bluetooth®.....	11-6
Using Bluetooth®	11-7
Suspending Bluetooth® Functions	11-8
Placing Bluetooth® Devices on Standby for Connection.....	11-9
Sending/Receiving Phone Book.....	11-9
Bluetooth® Functions.....	11-10
Wi-Fi	11-11
Before Using Wi-Fi.....	11-11
Enabling/Disabling Wi-Fi.....	11-12
Registering/Connecting to Access Points	11-12
Functions Available for Wi-Fi.....	11-15
SoftBank Utility Software (Japanese)	11-16
USB (Japanese)	11-17
Setting USB Mode	11-17
Transferring Data via USB Cable.....	11-17
Data Communication via USB Cable	11-17
AV Output	11-18
Connecting Handset to TV	11-18

Infrared

Before Using Infrared

Transfer Phone Book/Calendar events, messages, bookmarks and Data Folder files wirelessly between handset and compatible devices, including PCs and other mobiles.

- 942P infrared function is based on IrMC1.1, however, some IrMC1.1-based device transmissions may not be transmitted/received within specification.
- Debris may inhibit infrared transfers; clean infrared ports with a soft cloth beforehand.
- Direct sunlight/fluorescent light may inhibit transfers.
- Align infrared ports within 20 cm of one another and make sure no objects are placed between them. Do not move the devices until transfer is complete.



Transferable Files

File	One file	All files
Phone Book (Account Details)	Available	Up to 1000
Calendar events ¹	Available	Up to 1000
Tasks	Available	Up to 100
Received message	Available	Up to 3000
Sent message	Available	Up to 1000
Drafts	Available	Up to 10
Notepad	Available	Up to 20
Ring Songs&Tones	Available	N/A
Still image ^{2 3}	Available	N/A
Video ³	Available	N/A
Bookmark (Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser)	Available	Up to 100 each
Widget ³	Available	N/A

¹ Saved Holidays/Memorial days and Handwriting Diary not transferable

² Including Flash® files

³ Multiple files transferable

Note

- Following files cannot transfer:
 - Files prohibited for transfers from 942P
 - Phone Book entries and SMS on USIM Card
- If memory becomes full, remaining entries are truncated (Memory List: P.19-24).

One/Multiple File Transfer

- Transferable Files: P.11-2

Sending

- Highlight a file, and follow the steps below

Files to Send	Operation/Description
Phone Book	> [Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i> → <i>Send phonebook</i>
Account Details	> [Ir]
Messages	> [Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i> → <i>Send This</i>
Bookmarks	> [Menu] → <i>Send to ExtnlDvcs</i> → <i>Send Ir data</i> → <i>Send This</i>
Still Images/ Videos/ Widgets	> [Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i> ● To send multiple files: [Menu] → <i>Multiple-choice</i> → Check files to send → [Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i>
Other Files	> [Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i>

2 YES

Receiving

Main Menu ► Tools ► Receive via Infrared ► Receive

- When a file is received, **YES**
Send files from sender side within 30 seconds.
 - To receive subsequent files, select **YES**.

All File Transfers

Precaution

- Receiving all files overwrites all saved files including secret/protected files.
- Sending all Phone Book entries transfers Account Details as well. User-saved Account Details is overwritten on receiving handset (handset number remains).

Session Number

Session number (4 digits) is required for all file transfers via Infrared and IC transmission. Sender and recipient must enter same Session number to complete transfers.

Sending

- Highlight a file, and follow the steps below

Files to Send	Operation/Description
Phone Book	[Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i> → <i>Send all phonebook</i>
Messages	[Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i> → <i>Send All</i>
Bookmarks	[Menu] → <i>Send to ExtnlDvcs</i> → <i>Send Ir data</i> → <i>Send All</i>
Other Files	[Menu] → <i>Send all Ir data</i>

- Enter Phone Password → Enter Session number → **YES**
Recipient must enter the same Session number to start transfers.

Receiving

Main Menu ► Tools ► Receive via Infrared ► Receive All

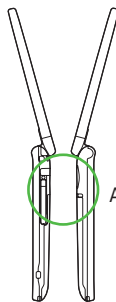
- 1 Enter Phone Password → Enter same Session number as sender's → **YES** → **YES**

Saved files are deleted, and transfer starts.

IC Transmission

Exchange files with another IC compatible handset using reader/writer function.

- Type of files and transfer conditions are same as those for infrared file transfer (☞ P.11-2).
Multiple file transfer is not available.
- IC transmission is not available when IC Card Lock (☞ P.13-12) is active.
- When receiving data, end all active functions.
- If there is difficulty in file transfer, move a ☞ logo close to or away from the other logo or move each side up, down, left, or right.
- Data cannot be sent during charging battery.



Align ☞ logos of both handsets

One File Transfer

Before Receiving a File

- **Receive IC Datum** is set to **ON** by default. When **Receive IC Datum** is **OFF**, One File Transfer is unavailable.
- To set **Receive IC Datum** on:
Main Menu ► **Tools** or **S! Appli** ► **Osaifu-Keitai**
► **IC Card Settings** ► **Receive IC Datum** ► **ON** or **OFF**

Sending

- 1 Highlight a file, and follow the steps below

Files to Send	Operation/Description
Phone Book	> [Menu] → <i>IC transmission</i> → <i>Send phonebook</i>
Account Details	> [ICtrans]
Messages	> [Menu] → <i>IC Transmission</i> → <i>Send This</i>
Bookmarks	> [Menu] → <i>Send to ExtnIDvcs</i> → <i>IC transmission</i> → <i>Send This</i>
Other Files	> [Menu] → <i>IC transmission</i>

- 2 **YES**

Receiving

- 1 Align logo on sender side with 942P (recipient) → **YES**

All File Transfers

- Precautions/Session number (P.11-3)

Sending

- 1 Highlight a file, and follow the steps below

Files to Send	Operation/Description
Phone Book	> [Menu] → <i>IC transmission</i> → <i>Send all phonebook</i>
Messages	> [Menu] → <i>IC Transmission</i> → <i>Send All</i>
Bookmarks	> [Menu] → <i>Send to ExtnIDvcs</i> → <i>IC transmission</i> → <i>Send All</i>
Other Files	> [Menu] → <i>AllIC transmission</i>

- 2 Enter Phone Password → Enter Session number → **YES**

Recipient must enter the same Session number to start transfers.

Receiving

- 1 Align logo on sender side with 942P (recipient)
- 2 **YES** → Enter Phone Password → Enter same Session number as sender's
Saved files are deleted. Transfer starts.

Bluetooth®

Connect handset to Bluetooth® devices to use functions below.

Function	Device	Description
Handsfree Calls (☞ P.11-10)	Headsets Handsfree devices	Talk handsfree on handset
Wireless Playback (☞ P.11-10)	Audio devices	Play back sounds (Digital TV/ Video) or music (Music Player) wirelessly from external speaker
Internet Connection (☞ P.11-10)	PC	Use handset as a modem for wireless internet connection
Sending/Receiving Phone Book (☞ P.11-9)	PC Handsets	Send/receive Phone Book entries wirelessly

Tip

Settings ● Ringtone Output to Headset/Handsfree Device ● End Calls when Bluetooth® Headset/Handsfree Device Disconnects ● Dial from Handset (When Headset Device is Connected) ● Always Use Handsfree Device to Make/Receive Calls (☞ P.18-19)

Before Using Bluetooth®

Bluetooth® Specifications

Version	Bluetooth® specification Ver.2.0+EDR
Supported Profiles¹	HSP: Headset Profile HFP: Hands-Free Profile A2DP: Advanced Audio Distribution Profile AVRCP: Audio/Video Remote Control Profile DUN: Dial-up Networking Profile OPP: Object Push Profile
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class2
Frequency Bands²	2.4 GHz (2.402 GHz-2.480 GHz)
Communication Distance³	Approximately ten meters

¹ Bluetooth® connections are available with compatible devices supporting the same profile.

² Bluetooth® operates in the 2.4 GHz unlicensed frequency band. Depending on other devices in use in the spectrum, Bluetooth® connection may slow down/terminate, or range may decrease.

³ Affected by distance between devices, obstructions, signal conditions, handset status, etc.

Notes

- Bluetooth® connection is not guaranteed with all Bluetooth® devices.
- Establish connections with certified Bluetooth® devices that meet the specification standards developed by Bluetooth® SIG.
- Due to the unique characteristics/specifications of a certified Bluetooth® device, connections or transfers may fail; procedures, displayed results or operations may vary from those described in the manual.
- When data transfer is interrupted, it may take some time for process to complete.
- Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations depending on the status of connected devices or signal conditions.
- For details about headset/handsfree devices, see the device manuals.
- Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi are not simultaneously available.

Radio Wave Interference with Wi-Fi Devices

Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi devices (IEEE802.11b/g) share the same frequency band (2.4 GHz). Use of both devices in close proximity may cause interference, affecting transmission speed, clarity or connection quality. If interference occurs:

- Maintain at least 10 m between Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi devices.
- Turn off Wi-Fi device when using Bluetooth® device within a 10 m radius.

Using Bluetooth®

Pair Bluetooth® devices with handset beforehand to establish connections for different Bluetooth® functions.

Searching & Pairing Devices

Search other Bluetooth® devices.

Paired devices appear in Search&Paired Device list.

- Bluetooth® Passkey is not necessary for paired devices.
- Search up to 20 Bluetooth® devices at one time; pair with up to ten Bluetooth® devices.
- Place Bluetooth® devices on standby for connection.
- When connection with paired device fails, re-register the device (☞ P.11-10).

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Search&Paired Device

1 YES*

Device search starts and names of found devices appear.



- To search again: [Search]



* If there are already paired devices in list, select a device → Select a function

2 Select a device → YES → Enter Phone Password

3 Select text entry field → Enter Bluetooth® Passkey

4 Select a Bluetooth® function

Handset connects to Bluetooth® device. When complete,  flashes in blue. After no Bluetooth® connection is made for a certain time,  appears in black and Power saver mode starts.

- When Bluetooth® device can connect to multiple services, confirmation appears asking whether to connect to another service.
- While connected,  (Blue) appears. While in Standby,  (Gray) appears.
- When **Dial-up** is selected, handset stands by for connection requests from other Bluetooth® devices.
- **Dial-up** can be selected regardless of profile types.

Bluetooth® Passkey

Bluetooth® Passkey (1 to 16 digits) is required to connect Bluetooth® devices; sender and recipient must input the same code to complete file transfers.

- Bluetooth® Passkey is not necessary for paired devices.

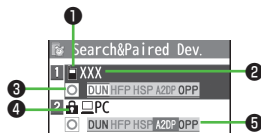
Search&Paired Device List

1 Device Type

Indicators appear for different types of devices.

2 Device Name

Device names appear. When no names are found, Bluetooth® addresses appear.



Search&Paired Device

3 Connection Status

: Connected : Not connected : Not found : Not paired

4 Protection

Indicator appears when registered contents are protected.

5 Profile Status

Indicators appear to show profile status.

Icon	Letter Color	Background Color	Frame Color	Status
	Blue	Gray	—	Not connected (Not paired)
	Blue	Gray	Blue	Not connected (Paired)
	White	Green	—	Connected
	Green	White	Green	Standby for connection
	White	Light green	—	Preferred device
	Gray	Gray	—	Not supported

Tip

Settings ● Duration to Search for Bluetooth® Devices (👉 P.18-19)

Suspending Bluetooth® Functions

Suspend all Bluetooth® functions connected or on standby for connection, and disable Bluetooth®.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Bluetooth

1 Bluetooth OFF → YES

- To return to standby for previously connected function:
Bluetooth ON

Placing Bluetooth® Devices on Standby for Connection

Main Menu ► Tools ► Bluetooth ► Accept Registered

- 1 Check functions to be on standby for connection →
☑ [Finish]
 - To uncheck, select functions to remove check marks.

Sending/Receiving Phone Book

Sending

- 1 Open Phone Book → ☰ [Menu] →
Send to Bluetooth
- 2 **One File Transfer**
Send phonebook → Select a recipient device
All File Transfer
Send all phonebook → Select a recipient device →
Enter Phone Password
- 3 **YES**

Receiving

Main Menu ► Tools ► Bluetooth ► Receive via Bluetooth

- 1 **One File Transfer**
Receive → **YES**
All File Transfer
Receive All → Enter Phone Password → **YES** → **YES**
 - If memory becomes full, remaining entries are truncated (Memory List: ☞ P.19-24).

Tip

Settings



- Authentication/Encryption Setting for Phone Book Transfer
- Password Entry for Sending All Phone Book Entries
(☞ P.18-19)

Bluetooth® Functions

From ► Main Menu ► Tools ► Bluetooth

■ Functions Available in Search&Paired Device Window

> *Search&Paired Device* →  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Register devices	> Enter Phone Password → Pair devices ( From Step 3 on P.11-8)
Preferred device	Set a preferred Bluetooth® device for incoming calls <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Available only for headset function compatible Bluetooth® devices. ● To cancel, perform same operation.
Protect/release	Protect/cancel devices. Protection prevents devices from being deleted or overwritten
Change device name	> Enter a device name
Delete	> <i>YES</i>
Description	Show device name, Bluetooth® address, device class and supported profile
Add shortcut icon	Create shortcuts ( P.1-21)

■ Use Bluetooth® Headsets for Calls

> *Search&Paired Device* → Select a device → *Headset* or *Hands-free*
→ *YES* → Make/receive a call using Bluetooth® device

■ Use Bluetooth® Device for Listening to Music

> *Search&Paired Device* → Select a device → *Audio* → Watch Digital TV or play back videos or music

- Digital TV/Video sounds are played only by A2DP profile compatible Bluetooth® devices compliant with SCMS-T copyright protection standard.

■ Use Handset as Modem for Internet Access from PCs

> *Search&Paired Device* → Select a device → *Dial-up*

- Handset waits for dial-up connection.
- Refer to a manual for Bluetooth® device for details.
Download utility software (942P) "Modem Wizard" from website below to PC and install software.
<http://panasonic.jp/mobile/support/download/942p/index.html>
- To establish a dial-up connection, see Help on "Modem Wizard."
- Connecting handset to a PC or PDA for Internet access may incur high packet transmission charges.

■ Place Bluetooth® Device on Standby for Dial-up

> *Dialup Rgstry Standby* → Enter Phone Password → *YES* → Select Bluetooth® Passkey text box → Enter Bluetooth® Passkey

Wi-Fi

Use wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) for Internet connection via home/public Wi-Fi networks enabling high-speed internet access.



- 942P Wi-Fi function supports IEEE802.11b/g.
- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi is required to access Internet over Wi-Fi.

Direct Access

Use Direct Browser to view PC sites via Wi-Fi connection.

Before Using Wi-Fi

Notes

- Wi-Fi connection may automatically switch to 3G depending on signal condition. (To set confirmation to appear when switching:  P.11-16)
- Wi-Fi connection is not guaranteed with all Wi-Fi devices.
- Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi are not simultaneously available.
- S! Mail/SMS function unavailable via Wi-Fi.
- Accidental data loss/information leakage may occur during Wi-Fi transmission. Use security settings ( P.11-14).
- Wi-Fi is disconnected when Backlight turns off; turn Backlight on to re-connect to the network.
- Wi-Fi is not available while abroad.

Radio Wave Interference with Bluetooth® Devices

Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi devices (IEEE802.11b/g) share the same frequency band (2.4 GHz). Radio wave interference occurs if Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi devices are used in close proximity, causing low transmission speed, noise or poor connection. If interference occurs, take the following measures:

- Keep 10 m or more between Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi devices.
- Turn off Bluetooth® device when using Wi-Fi device within a radius of less than 10 m.

Getting Started

Checking Information

- Access point information varies by access point.
- Security information may be required.

Access Point Registration/Connection

Complete access point registration/connection.


Starting Transmission

Transmission is enabled once handset comes into Wi-Fi range.

- Wi-Fi status indicators:  P.11-13

Enabling/Disabling Wi-Fi

- 1 Press and hold 

Wi-Fi status indicator appears ( P.11-13).



Note

- Alternatively, switch Wi-Fi on/off from **Main Menu** ► **Tools** ► **Wi-Fi** ► **ON/OFF**

Registering/Connecting to Access Points

Following methods are available for registering/connecting to access points.

Search/Setting	Search access points for registration/connection.
Manual Setting	Manually register/connect to access points.
AOSS	Use AOSS™ (AirStation™ One-Touch Secure System) for registration/connection. For AOSS™-compatible access points, press AOSS button on access point device for automatic setup.
BB mobilepoint	Register to BB mobilepoint and set as access point. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The BB mobilepoint profile is saved to handset by default. For details on BB mobilepoint, visit http://tm.softbank.jp/english/consumer/wlan/index.html

- Register up to 10 access points.
- User ID and password is required for connecting to pre-registered access points (Public Wi-Fi Setting:  P.11-14).
- Set handset to require Phone Password for viewing/editing access point information ( P.11-16).
- For setting/operating access point devices, refer to device manual.
- **Wi-Fi connection is not available when access point channel is set to 12-14 ch and stealth mode.**

Note

- Alternatively, search and register access point from **Main Menu**
▶ **Tools** ▶ **Wi-Fi** ▶ **Access Point Search**. Registration is available after connection.
- Pre-registered access points may be deleted from Profile List if another USIM Card is inserted. BB mobile point can be easily reconfigured (☞P11-15).

Access Point Search

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Wi-Fi** ▶ **Profile Lists/Settings**

- 1 **[Y?]** **[Menu]** → **New Profile** → **Search&Setting**
Select **YES** when prompted to turn Wi-Fi **ON**.
List of available access points appears.
 - To search again: **[M]** **[Search]**
- 2 Select an access point
- 3 **[G]** **[Store]** → **YES**
Handset registers access point.
- 4 **[G]** **[CNCT]** → **YES**
Handset connects to access point.

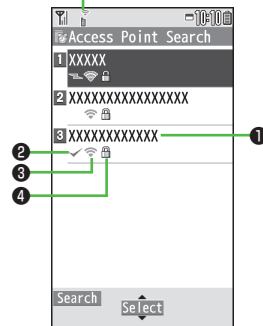
Access Point List

Wi-Fi Status Indicators

- Wi-Fi ON (out of range)
- Keitai Wi-Fi/Direct Access Available (In-Range/Transmitting)
- Direct Access Available (In-Range/Transmitting)

- Number of blue arches indicates signal strength.

- 1 **Access Point Name**
Detected SSID (ESSID) appears.
Access point name appears for a registered access point.
- 2 **Registered Networks**
✓: Registered (not connected)
✗: Registered (connected)
- 3 **Signal Strength**
Signal status appears.
- 4 **Security Status**
Security status appears.




Access Point List


Manual Registration/Connection



Check respective access point information (SSID, security type, encryption key, etc.) in advance. For details on access point devices, refer to respective manuals.


Main Menu ► Tools ► Wi-Fi ► Profile Lists/Settings

1  [Menu] → **New Profile** → **Manual Setting**

2 Highlight an item (See below) →  [Edit]

Item	Operation/Description
Profile Name	> Enter an access point name
SSID	> Enter the same SSID (ESSID) as access point
IP Setting	Set IP address and DNS server > Highlight IP Address Setting or DNS Server Setting →  [Edit] → Automatically or Manually (→ For Manually , edit respective items)
Security Setting	Set security/encryption method according to access point > Select a security type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · WEP → Enter WEP key → Enter encryption key · WPA/WPA2-PSK → Enter encryption key <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To cancel security setting: Non

Yahoo! Keitai Setting	Select whether to use Keitai Wi-Fi > Accept or Not Accept ● When using Direct Browser only, select Not Accept .
Public W-Fi Setting	Set public wireless LAN on/off > ON or OFF (→ For ON , select ID or Password →  [Edit] → Enter ID or password) ● Connection with all public wireless LAN services is not guaranteed.
Proxy Setting	Select whether to use HTTP proxy for Direct Access > YES or NO (→ For YES , highlight an item →  [Edit] → Edit)




3  [Store] → **YES**
Handset registers access point.

4  [CNCT] → **YES**
Handset connects to access point.

Registration/Connection Using AOSS™

- For details on access point device operations, refer to access point device manual.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Wi-Fi ► Profile Lists/Settings










-  [AOSS]
 - Select **YES** to register/connect to an access point after disconnecting from registered access point.
- Press AOSS button at access point
Press within 120 seconds.
Confirmation appears when setting is complete.
-  [Store] → **YES**
Handset registers access point.
-  [CNCT] → **YES**
Handset connects to access point.

Functions Available for Wi-Fi

■ Functions Available in Profile List/Setting Window


> Main Menu ► Tools ► Wi-Fi ► Profile Lists/Settings

►  [Menu] ► Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Connect	Connect to a registered access point > YES
Change Priority	Change priority for registered access points > Select an access point →  to move to target →  →  [Finish]
New Profile	> Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none">• AOSS ( From Step 2 (Left))• Search&Setting ( From Step 2 on P.11-13)• Manual Setting ( From Step 2 on P.11-14)
New BB mobilepoint	Enter user ID/password to register BB mobilepoint > Highlight an item →  [Edit] → Enter user ID/ password →  [Set]
Edit	> Edit items
Copy	Copy registered access point
Delete	> Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Delete this → YES• Delete selected → Check access points →  [Finish] → YES• Delete all → Enter Phone Password

■ View Connection Status

> Main Menu ► Tools ► Wi-Fi ► Connection Status

- To update status:  [Update]

■ Set Confirmation to Appear when Switching between Wi-Fi and 3G

<Default> OFF

- > Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Wi-Fi ▶ Wi-Fi/3G Switch Conf.
 - ▶ Switch to Wi-Fi or Switch to 3G ▶ ON

■ View MAC Address

- > Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Wi-Fi ▶ MAC Address

■ Protect Access Point Information with Password

<Default> OFF

Set handset to require Phone Password for viewing/editing access point information.

- > Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Wi-Fi ▶ Phone Password Lock
 - ▶ Enter Phone Password ▶ ON

SoftBank Utility Software (Japanese)

Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, messages, Bookmarks, Notepads and Data Folder can be transferred to a PC, edited or managed by using SoftBank Utility Software.

- For details on and downloading SoftBank Utility Software, visit <http://www.softbank.jp/mb/r/sbu/> (Japanese)

Note

- USB cable (not included) is necessary for using SoftBank Utility Software.
- S! Appli, PC Movies, TV, Lifestyle-Appli, Books, Customized Screen, Templates, Font and Other Documents cannot be backed up.
- Copy protected files may not be backed up.
- Set USB Mode (☞ P.11-17) to **Communication Mode**.

USB (Japanese)

Connect handset to a PC via USB cable (not included) specified by SoftBank for data transfer or data communication.

Setting USB Mode

<Default> Communication Mode

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity ► USB Mode

- 1 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Communication Mode	Packet transmission, 64K data transmission, data transfer and calls with USB handsfree compatible devices are available (☞ P.11-16)
microSD Mode	Read/write data on microSD Card (☞ P.10-23)
MTP Mode	Transfer/delete music data via Windows Media® Player on PC (☞ P.9-4)

Transferring Data via USB Cable

- Transferring data using SoftBank Utility Software (☞ P.11-16).
- Transferring data in microSD Mode (☞ P.10-23)

Data Communication via USB Cable

Use handset as a modem for Internet access by connecting handset with a PC.

- Download utility software from URL below and install on PC.
<http://panasonic.jp/mobile/support/download/942p/index.html>

- 1 Install "USBドライバ (USB Driver)" and "Modem Wizard" from Utility Software (942P) to a PC
- 2 Set handset to **Communication Mode** (☞ Left), and connect handset to PC via USB cable
 - Power up handset before connecting to PC via USB cable.
- 3 Start up "Modem Wizard," and operate communication setup
 - "Modem Wizard" enables you to set up APN and dial-up easily. For setup/starting procedures, see "Modem Wizard" Help.

Note

- Connecting handset to a PC or PDA for Internet access may incur high packet transmission fees.

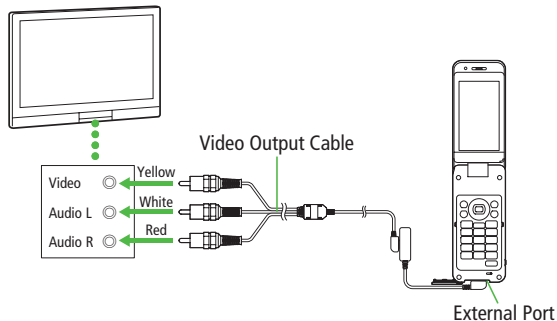
AV Output

View the following on a TV set or other devices using a SoftBank-specified Video Output Cable (not included): Video Call images, Digital TV images, still images/videos saved on 942P.

- View AV-output-compatible S! Appli on TV.

Connecting Handset to TV

- To use Video Output Cable (not included), Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (not included) is required.



- 1 Open External Port Cover
- 2 Connect Video Output Cable to handset using Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable
 - To connect Video Output Cable to Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable: P.1-6

- 3 Connect Video Output Cable to video/audio input terminal on TV set
- 4 Open an image file on handset
 - To toggle image size:

Note

- Some images cannot be viewed on TV.
- The following operations are unavailable for video playback on TV:
 - In Normal Position, **Main Menu** ► **Data Folder** ► **Videos** ► **BD/DVD Recorder**
 - In Viewer Position, tab → **Data Folder** → **Videos**
- Display size setting is not available for some TV sets.

Handset Security

Changing Phone Password	12-2
Security Functions	12-2
USIM PINs.....	12-2
Keyguard.....	12-4
Privacy Key Lock	12-4
Personal Data Lock.....	12-5
Secure Remote Lock	12-7
Key Pad Dial Lock	12-8
Side-keys Guard	12-9
Additional Lock Functions.....	12-9
Restricting Calls/Messages.....	12-9
Hiding Call Logs and Sent/Received Address List	12-9
Secret Mode/Secret Data Only	12-10
Setting Secret Mail	12-11
Mail Security	12-11
Call Restrictions	12-12
Delaying Ringtone.....	12-12
Rejecting Unknown Callers.....	12-13
Rejecting Calls without Caller ID.....	12-13
Reset.....	12-13
Reset Settings	12-13
All Reset	12-14

Changing Phone Password

<Default> 9999

Change Phone Password as required.

- For Phone Password details:  P.1-28

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security

► Change Phone Password

- 1 Enter current 4 to 8-digit Phone Password
- 2 Enter new 4 to 8-digit Phone Password → **YES**

12

Handset Security

12-2

Security Functions

USIM PINs

- For more information about PINs:  P.1-5

Note

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) are not dialable in PIN/PIN2, PUK/PUK2 entry window.

PIN Authentication

Activate to require PIN entry each time handset is turned on.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► PIN Authentication

- 1 Enter Phone Password → **PIN Authentication**
- 2 **ON** or **OFF**
- 3 Enter PIN

Changing PIN/PIN2

- Set PIN Authentication (☞ P.12-2) to **ON** before changing PIN.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► PIN Authentication

- 1 Enter Phone Password → **Change PIN** or **Change PIN2**
- 2 Enter current PIN/PIN2
- 3 Enter new PIN/PIN2
- 4 Reenter new PIN/PIN2

PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK/PUK2)

PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated if PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times. Cancel PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock by entering PIN Unblocking Key (PUK/PUK2).

- For information about PUK/PUK2, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☞ P.19-33).


- 1 In PIN lock mode, enter PUK/PUK2
- 2 Enter new PIN/PIN2
- 3 Reenter new PIN/PIN2

Note

- If PUK/PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten times, USIM Card is locked and handset is disabled (turning off power counts as one incorrect entry). Write down PUK/PUK2.
- For procedures required to unlock USIM Card, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☞ P.19-33).

Keyguard

<Default> Deactivate


Lock handset keys to prevent accidental operation. Note, incoming calls can be answered by pressing .

- While set,  appears in Standby.

1 In Standby, press and hold .

- To cancel Keyguard, repeat operation.

While Keyguard is Active

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) are dialable. Entered numbers do not appear on Display. Once numbers are dialed, Keyguard is canceled.
- Press  to disable Calendar event tone/Alarm, or place an incoming call on hold.
- Cancel Keyguard during a call or while incoming call is placed on hold.

Privacy Key Lock

<Default> Deactivate

Set Privacy Key Lock to require Phone Password for using handset (Password not required for turning handset on/off and answering calls).

- While locked,  appears in Standby.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Privacy Key Lock

1 Enter Phone Password

- To cancel Privacy Key Lock, enter Phone Password in Standby. If Phone Password is incorrectly entered five times, handset turns off.

While Privacy Key Lock is Active

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) are dialable.
- Only phone numbers appear on Display for incoming calls.
- Message ringtones or Alarm tones are disabled.
- Calendar event tone or Alarm is disabled.
- S! Quick News and some Display indicators do not appear. They appear after Privacy Key Lock is canceled.

Note

- Turning off power does not cancel Privacy Key Lock.

Personal Data Lock

Set Personal Data Lock to prevent others from reading or tampering with your personal information. Activate to require Phone Password for accessing personal data.

Locked Functions/Data

- S! Appli
- Phone Book search/saving/setting/call restrictions
- Memory Manager/ Memory Status (Phone Book)
- Account Details
- Notepad
- Calendar
- Tasks
- Shortcuts
- Information
- Camera/Video Camera
- Picture Album
- Lifestyle-Appli
- microSD Backup
- Answer Phone
- Voice Recorder
- Customized Screen
- Voice Announce
- Dictionary
- Post blog
- S! Mail/SMS/PC Mail
- Yahoo! Keitai viewing/setting
- PC Site Browser viewing/setting
- Bookmarks/Saved Pages
- Rejecting unknown callers
- Mobile Widget
- S! Quick News
- S! Information Channel/Weather
- Content Key obtaining/backup
- Voice Dial
- S! GPS Navi
- Data Folder*
- Music Player
- Digital TV
- Bar Code Reader
- Receive via Infrared/Bluetooth®
- IC Data transmission
- Alarm
- Wi-Fi
- Reset Settings/All Reset
- Software Update

* Font setting is available.

Activating/Canceling Personal Data Lock

<Default> Deactivate


- While locked,  appears in Standby.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Personal Data Lock

1 Enter Phone Password → **Activate/Deactivate**

- To cancel Personal Data Lock, repeat operation. If Lock OFF at Open is set, password entry is requested when handset is opened.

Canceling Personal Data Lock Temporarily

When Phone Password is entered,  disappears and disabled functions become temporarily available.

- Once handset returns to Standby while no functions are active, Personal Data Lock is active again.

Note

- While Personal Data Lock is set, some indicators do not appear in Standby. They appear after lock is canceled.
- Turning off power does not cancel Personal Data Lock.

Customizing Personal Data Lock

Enable/disable Alarm, incoming message notification, etc. while Personal Data Lock is active.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Personal Data Lock

- 1 Enter Phone Password → **Customize** → Select an item (See below)


Item	Operation/Description
Alarm Tone	Enable/disable Alarms (Calendar, TV timer, or other alerts) or TV Timer Recording. > Select an item → Accept (Enable) or Not Accept (Disable)
Incoming Call Act	Show/hide incoming message window and indicator (incoming messages) or Phone Book entry information (incoming calls). > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Incoming Message → Accept (Show indicator) or Not Accept (Hide indicator) · Phone Book Available → Accept (Show Phone Book Entry information) or Not Accept (Hide information)
Display/Tone	Enable/disable Display settings, ringtones or indicators. > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Internal Display → Accept (Enable Display Settings) or Not Accept (Disable) · Ring Tones → Accept (Enable Sound Settings) or Not Accept (Disable) · S! Info Ch./Weather → Accept (Show indicators) or Not Accept (Hide indicators) · Widget Contents → Accept (Show widgets) or Not Accept (Hide widgets)

Activating Personal Data Lock when Closing Handset

<Default> OFF

Set Timer Lock at Close to automatically activate Personal Data Lock when specified time has elapsed after handset is closed.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Timer Lock at Close

- 1 Enter Phone Password
- 2 **Personal Data Lock** → Select a time
 Confirmation appears asking whether to activate Lock OFF at Open.
 - While set,  appears in Standby.
 - When **OFF** is selected, setting is canceled.

Showing Personal Data Lock OFF Window when Opening Handset

<Default> OFF

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Lock OFF at Open

1 Enter Phone Password

2 *Personal Data Lock* → ON

Note

- When Timer Lock at Close and Lock OFF at Open are both active, canceling Personal Data Lock when opening handset temporarily cancels lock. However, lock activates again when specified time elapses after closing handset.

Secure Remote Lock

If handset is lost or stolen, remotely lock handset from a PC or mobile. If Secure Remote Lock is active, all operations are unavailable except to turn handset on.

- For service details and user agreement/registration, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) or My SoftBank.

Accessing My SoftBank from Handset (Japanese)

For service details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► Menu List ► My SoftBank
► English

Follow onscreen instructions.

Note

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) are dialable even while Secure Remote Lock is set.

Showing Messages during Secure Remote Lock

<Default> OFF

Set Display message to appear when Secure Remote Lock is active.

- Use preset message or create a message.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Lock Message

1 Enter Phone Password

2 **Display Setting** → ON

■ Save Lock Messages

> After Step 1, **Message** → Enter a message

Key Pad Dial Lock

<Default> Deactivate

Allow dialing only from Phone Book entries and lock dialing with keypad. Unauthorized use of handset can be prevented.

- While locked,  appears in Standby.

■ Unavailable Operations

- Dialing with keypad
- Phone Book (saving, editing, deleting, copying from microSD Card, and sending/receiving via Infrared, IC transmission and Bluetooth®)
- Sending S! Mail/SMS (manually entering addresses)

■ Available Operations

- Dialing from Phone Book or Voice Dial
- Dialing from Redial, Outgoing Call Logs, Incoming Call Logs, Sent address, or Received address (only phone numbers/mail addresses saved in Phone Book)

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Key Pad Dial Lock

1 Enter Phone Password

- To cancel Key Pad Dial Lock, repeat operation.

Note

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) are dialable even while Key Pad Dial Lock is set.


Side-keys Guard

<Default> OFF

Set Side-keys Guard to disable side key operations while handset is closed.




Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings
► Side-keys Guard

1 ON

While Side-keys Guard is set,  appears in Standby.

- To activate side key operations while handset is closed, select **OFF**.

Note

- When Menu Icons ( P.18-4) is set to **Basic** or **Customize**, press  in Standby → Press and hold  to toggle **ON/OFF**.

Additional Lock Functions

■ IC Card Lock

Deactivate Osaifu-Keitai® functions ( P.13-12).

■ Remote Lock

Deactivate Osaifu-Keitai® functions remotely ( P.13-12).

Restricting Calls/Messages

Hiding Call Logs and Sent/Received Address List

<Default> ON

Main Menu ► Settings ► Incoming Settings ► Call Logs

- 1 Enter Phone Password
- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Incoming	Show/hide Incoming Call Logs/Received address list
Outgoing	Show/hide Redial/Outgoing Call Logs/Sent address list

3 OFF

Note

- While Incoming Call Logs is **OFF**, Answer Phone (Voice Calls) does not play. Selecting **Missed call** Information does not show Incoming Call Logs.

Secret Mode/Secret Data Only

<Default> Deactivate

Phone Book entries and calendar events saved as secret data appear only when Secret Mode/Secret Data Only is active.

- Set Phone Book or Calendar events as secret data (Phone Book: P.4-7, P.4-8 / Calendar events: P.13-5)

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security

1 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Secret Mode	View all data including secret data <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● While set, appears in Standby.
Secret Data Only	View only secret data <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● While set, flashes in Standby.

2 Enter Phone Password

For Secret Data Only, number of saved secret data appears.

Cancel Secret Mode/Secret Data Only

- > In Standby, or follow Step 1 above
- disappears.

Cancel Secret Mode/Secret Setting

> In Phone Book/Calendar event window, [Menu] → *Release secret*

Note


- Select whether to save data edited/saved in Secret Mode as secret data. Data saved/edited in Secret Data Only are saved as secret data.
- Turn off handset to cancel secret setting.

Setting Secret Mail


<Default> ON

Hide messages to/from secret Phone Book entries.

- Even if Secret Mail Display is set to **OFF**, secret mail appears when Secret Mode/Secret Data Only is active.

- 1  → **Settings**
- 2 **Universal Settings** → **Secret Mail Display**
- 3 Enter Phone Password
- 4 **OFF**



Note

- When both Spam Filter and Secret Mail Display are set, messages from Phone Book entries saved as secret mode are sorted into Spam Folder (Safe List:  P.14-19).

Mail Security

Set handset to require Phone Password for opening mail folders or operating Server Mail.

-  appears for set mail folders and Server Mail box.

- 1  → **Settings**
- 2 **Universal Settings** → **Mail Security**
- 3 Enter Phone Password → Check items →  **[Finish]**

■ **Set/Cancel Mail Security by Folder (Incoming Mail or Sent/Unsent)**



>  → **Incoming Mail** or **Sent/Unsent** → Highlight a folder →


 **[Menu]** → **Mail Security** → Enter Phone Password

-  appears for set folders.
- To cancel Mail Security, highlight locked folder and repeat operation.

Call Restrictions

Reject/accept/forward calls from specified phone numbers, or restrict calling unspecified phone numbers.

- 1  → Search Phone Book
- 2 Select an entry →  [Menu] → **Restrictions**
- 3 Enter Phone Password
- 4 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Restrict Dialing	Allow calls only to specified numbers
Call Rejection	Reject specified numbers
Call Acceptance	Accept from specified numbers only
Call Forwarding	Automatically forward specified numbers <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Set destination numbers (Call Forwarding:  P.2-17)

- To cancel, repeat operation.

View/Cancel Phone Book Restrictions

- > **Main Menu** ► **Phone** ► **Restrictions** ► Enter Phone Password
 ► Select an item* ► Select a Phone Book entry ► Select a number
 ► **YES**

* ★ appears for set item.

- To cancel all restrictions: Highlight an item →  [Menu] → **Release Settings** → **YES**

Note

- **Missed call** Information appears in Standby for calls from rejected numbers.
- While Personal Data Lock is active, **Call Rejection** and **Call Acceptance** are temporarily deactivated.

Delaying Ringtone

<Default> OFF

Delay ringtone/vibration for Voice/Video Calls from unknown numbers.

- Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Incoming Settings**
 ► **Ring Time Settings** ► **Ring Starting Time**

- 1 **ON** → Enter start time
- **Hide Missed Call Records (Disconnected during Ringtone Delay)**
 > **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Incoming Settings**
 ► **Ring Time Settings** ► **Missed Calls Display** ► **Not Display**

Rejecting Unknown Callers

<Default> Accept

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Reject Unknown

- 1 Enter Phone Password → **Reject**

Rejecting Calls without Caller ID

<Default> Accept

Reject calls without Caller ID or from pay phones.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Call Setting w/o ID

- 1 Enter Phone Password
- 2 Select an item → **Reject**

Reset

Reset Settings

Cancel custom settings and return handset functions to their default settings.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Reset Settings

- 1 Enter Phone Password → **YES**

Note

- Some default settings may not be restored.
- Reset Settings cancels Navi Appli settings in S! GPS Navi. Set a Navi Appli to activate from Select Navi Appli (☞ P.18-26).

All Reset

Cancel custom settings and return handset functions to their default settings; all Phone Book/Data Folder entries etc. are deleted.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► All Reset

1 Enter Phone Password → **YES** → **YES**

Handset automatically turns off and restarts.

Note

- Fully charge battery (🔋) beforehand.
- Phone Password is reset to default.
- USIM Card/microSD Card files are not affected.
- Data transmission settings (set via PC) are not affected.
- Customized settings, Call Logs, downloaded S! Appli, etc. cannot be restored after performing All Reset.

Calendar	13-2
Opening Calendar	13-2
Creating Calendar Events	13-2
Saving Holidays/Memorial Days	13-3
Viewing/Editing Calendar Event Details	13-4
Calendar Functions	13-4
Tasks	13-5
Saving a Task	13-5
Using Tasks	13-6
Alarms	13-6
Alarm Tone	13-6
Setting Alarm	13-7
Calculator	13-8
Notepad	13-8
Saving a Note	13-8
Notepad Functions	13-9
Osaifu Keitai®	13-9
Downloading Lifestyle-Appli	13-10
Activating Lifestyle-Appli	13-10
Reader/Writer Transactions	13-11
IC Card Lock	13-12
Dictionary (Japanese)	13-13

Sound Recorders	13-14
Voice Recorder	13-14
Voice Announce	13-14
Bar Code Reader	13-15
Scanning Barcodes	13-15
Viewing/Editing Scanned Data	13-16
Using Scanned Data	13-16
Pedometer	13-17
Activating/Deactivating Pedometer	13-17
Pedometer Functions	13-18

Calendar

View by day, week or month; set Alarms for events.

Opening Calendar

Main Menu ► Tools ► Calendar

Current month appears.

- When a date with Calendar events is selected, number of AM and PM events and up to three contents appear.
- Press [Prev.] or [Next] to show previous/next month calendar.
- To switch Month/Week view: P.13-4



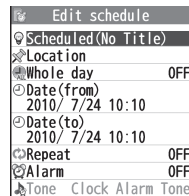
Month View

Creating Calendar Events

Save up to 1000 entries.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Calendar

- 1 to highlight a date → [New] → *Schedule*








- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Select icon/ Edit summary	> Select an icon → Edit subject
Edit location	> Enter location
Whole day setting	> OFF or ON ● When ON is set, Alarm goes off at 0:00 a.m.
Date (from)	> Enter start date and time
Date (to)	> Enter end date and time
Repeat	> Select a repeat type → (For Select day , check days → [Finish])
Alarm	> Select an Alarm type (→ For ON/Set time , enter time) ● Alarm Tone: P.13-6
Alarm tone	> Select an Alarm tone type → Select a folder → Select an Alarm tone
Contents	> Enter event description

3 [Finish]

Calendar Event Indicators

Following indicators appear in Calendar Window.

- (Blue): Morning event
- (Orange): Afternoon event
- (Underscore): Event that lasts for two days or longer
- Following indicators appear on Display.
 -  : Alarm
 -  : Monthly
 -  : Daily
 -  : Yearly
 -  : Weekly

Note

- Calendar events between 00:00 on 2000/01/01 and 23:59 on 2037/12/31 can be saved on handset.
- Alarm tone does not sound when Privacy Key Lock or Personal Data Lock is set. However, settings can be changed even while Personal Data Lock is set (☞ P.12-6).

Saving Holidays/Memorial Days

Save up to 100 entries (one entry a day) each for Holidays or Memorial days.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Calendar

- 1 (Highlight a date →) [New] → *Holidays* or *Memorial days*
- 2 Select an item (See below)




Item	Operation/Description
Date setting	> Enter a date
Repeat	> Select a repeat type <ul style="list-style-type: none">● 1 time does not repeat Holidays/Memorial days events.
Edit holiday/anniversary	> Enter description

3 [Finish]

Indicators

Holidays appear in red.

Memorial days are marked with a red circle.

- Following indicators appear in Calendar/Calendar Event List Window:
 -  : Holidays
 -  : Memorial days
 -  : Yearly repeat

Viewing/Editing Calendar Event Details

Main Menu ► Tools ► Calendar

1  to select a date

2010/ 7/24 (Sat)	
1	11:35~11:35 Scheduled
2	11:40~12:00 Shopping
3	12:30~13:00 Meal

Calendar Event List

2 Select an event

Detailed schedule appears.

- To edit:  [Edit] → Edit selected item (Schedule:  From Step 2 on P.13-2/ Holiday, Anniversary:  From Step 2 on P.13-3)

Schedule	
Summary	Scheduled
Whole day	OFF
Date (from)	2010/ 7/24 (Sat) 11:35
Date (to)	2010/ 7/24 (Sat) 11:35
Repeat	OFF
Alarm	OFF
Contents	Scheduled

Calendar Event Details




Calendar Functions

From ► Main Menu ► Tools ► Calendar


Functions Available in Calendar Window




> Highlight a date →  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
New	Create a new entry ( P.13-2, P.13-3)

Item	Operation/Description
Weekly display/ 1 Month	Toggle Month/Week view
Icon display	Entries in category of selected icon appear > Select an icon
No. of schedules	Display number of saved Schedule, Holiday or Anniversary entries
Add shortcut icon	Create a shortcut ( P.1-21)
Send all Ir data	( P.11-3)
All IC transmission	( P.11-5)
Delete past	Delete past entries/items, prior to highlighted date > Select a category to delete → YES
Delete all	> Enter Phone Password → Select an item → YES
Reset holidays	Restore deleted Holidays > YES

Functions Available in Calendar Events List/Details

> Select a date (→ Select a Schedule, Holiday or Anniversary) →  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
New	Create a new entry ( P.13-2, P.13-3)
Edit	Edit selected item ( Left)
Copy	Copy an entry to another day > Enter date and time to copy an entry to →  [Finish]
Handwriting Diary	Activate Handwriting Diary

Item	Operation/Description
Calendar display	Switch from Icon display to Calendar display
Icon display	Entries in category of selected icon appear > Select an icon
Set secret mode/ Release secret	Activate/deactivate Secret Mode > YES (→ For Set secret mode , enter Phone Password) ● Secret entries appear only in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only (↗ P.12-10).
Compose message	Insert event date and details to message text (↗ From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Send Ir data	(↗ P.11-3)
Send all Ir data	(↗ P.11-3)
IC transmission	(↗ P.11-5)
AllIC transmission	(↗ P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy an entry to microSD Card > YES ● To display data on microSD Card: ↗ P.10-20
Delete this	> YES
Delete past	Delete past entries/items, prior to highlighted date > Select a category to delete → YES
Delete select	> Check entries to delete → [New] → YES

Tasks

Make quick notes of task to manage in Task list.

Saving a Task

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tasks

- [New] → Select an item (See below)
 - To check saved Tasks, select a Task. To edit, press [Edit] in detail window.

Item	Operation/Description
Edit Tasks	> Enter content
Due date	> Select how to enter due date → Enter due date ● Select No date to enter none.
Priority	> Select a priority level
Category	> Select a category
Alarm	> Select an Alarm type (→ For ON/Set time , enter time) ● Alarm Tone: ↗ P.13-6
Alarm tone	> Select an Alarm tone type → Select a folder → Select an Alarm tone










- [Finish]
 - When content is not entered, Tasks cannot be saved.

Note

- Alarm tone does not sound when Privacy Key Lock or Personal Data Lock is set. However, settings can be changed even while Personal Data Lock is set (↗ P.12-6).

Using Tasks


In Tasks window, press  [Menu] for following operations.

Item	Operation/Description
New	Create a new entry ( P.13-5)
Edit	Edit an entry ( P.13-5)
Change status	Change status indicator shown in Tasks list > Select a status (→ For Completion , select an item → Enter Completion date) ● Overdue status indicator turns red.
Show by category	> Select a category
Sort/Filter	Sort list by due date, entry order, status, etc.; show only specified tasks > Select a condition
Add shortcut icon	Create a shortcut ( P.1-21)
Send Ir data	( P.11-3)
Send all Ir data	( P.11-3)
IC transmission	( P.11-5)
AllIC transmission	( P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy a Task to microSD Card > YES ● To display data on microSD Card:  P.10-20
Delete this	> YES
Delete select	> Check entries →  [Finish] → YES
Delete completed	Delete an entry in Completion status > YES
Delete all	> Enter Phone Password → YES

Alarms

Alarm Tone

When scheduled time arrives, alarm tone sounds for approximately five minutes and Notification Light illuminates.

- For Calendar events and Tasks, alarm message and animation corresponding to selected icon appear on Display.
- Alarm duration can be changed ( P.13-7)


To Stop Alarm Tone for Calendar Events, Tasks or Alarm

Press any key.

Missed Alarm

"Missed alarm" Information appears in Standby for alarms missed during Privacy Key Lock, Personal Data Lock or Infrared transmission once locks are canceled or transmission ends. Select Information to view content.

Note

- When one or more Alarms are set to the same time, alarm sounds in the order of : "Alarm" → "Timer Recording" → "Tasks" → "Calendar" → "Timer Watching"
 For Tasks and Calendar, "Missed alarm" Information appears.
- If alarms are set for more than one Calendar event, press  [Next] when alarm sounds to toggle Calendar event entries.

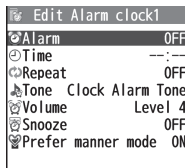
Setting Alarm

Set up to 12 alarms. Alarm tone sounds at the specified time once, everyday or weekly as set.

- appears in Standby when Alarm is set.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Alarms

1 Highlight an Alarm → [Edit]



2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Alarm	Activate or cancel Alarm > ON or OFF
Time	> Set Alarm time
Repeat	> Select a repeat type (→ For Select day , check days → [Finish])
Tone	> Select an Alarm tone type → Select a folder → Select an Alarm tone
Volume	> to set Alarm tone volume
Snooze	When Snooze is set to ON , Alarm tone sounds for 60 seconds, repeating at specified intervals. > ON → Enter number of time Alarm goes off → Enter interval time ● To change ring time or cancel Snooze: OFF → Enter alarm duration

Item Operation/Description

Prefer manner mode > Set Manner Mode or Alarm priority.
> **ON** or **OFF**

3 [Finish]

Alarm Indicators

- Following indicators appear:

: Repeats daily : Repeats weekly

Cancel & Reactivate Alarm

> In Step 1 (highlight an Alarm), [Menu] → **set this, set all, Release this** or **Release all** → **YES**

- Cancel or reactivate an alarm entry as required.
- Highlight an entry → to reactivate/cancel Alarm.

Snooze Function

If **ON**, press any key; Snooze window appears. To cancel Alarm, press .

- In Viewer Position, tap **Stop** to cancel Alarm; Snooze window appears. To cancel Snooze function, tap **End** or press (/). (While Snooze function is active, backlight does not change to Power Saver mode.)

Note

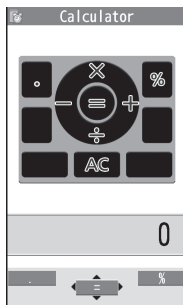
- Alarm tone does not sound when Privacy Key Lock or Personal Data Lock is set. However, settings can be changed even while Personal Data Lock is set (P.12-6).

Calculator

- Calculates up to 10 digits.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Calculator

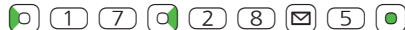
Operation	Assigned key
Number (0 - 9)	-
+	
-	
x	
÷	
=	
Decimal point	
%	
Clear	



13 Tools

Example:

-17+28.5=11.5



Note

- In Viewer Position, up to three calculation histories appear. Copy and paste calculated results.

Notepad

Save up to 20 notes.

Saving a Note

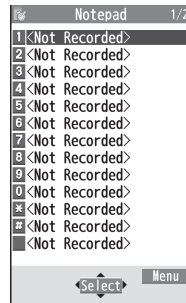
Main Menu ► Tools ► Notepad

1 <Not Recorded>

- Select a saved note to view content.
 [Edit] to edit.

2 Enter text










- Up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters can be entered.



Notepads Window

Notepad Functions

In Notepad list window, press  [Menu] for following operations.

Item	Operation/Description
Edit	Edit a saved note
Compose message	Insert Notepad text to message ( From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Edit schedule	Copy a note to Schedule to create a Calendar event > Schedule → Save a new note ( From Step 2 on P.13-2)
Add shortcut icon	Create a shortcut ( P.1-21)
Send Ir data	( P.11-3)
Send all Ir data	( P.11-3)
IC transmission	( P.11-5)
AllIC transmission	( P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy a note to microSD Card > YES <ul style="list-style-type: none">● To display data on microSD Card:  P.10-20
Notepad Info	Display entry date, latest modified date and category of note
Category	> Select a category <ul style="list-style-type: none">● When no category applies, select None.
Delete this	> YES
Delete selected	> Check notes →  [Finish] → YES
Delete all	> Enter Phone Password → YES

Osaifu-Keitai®

"Osaifu-Keitai®" is a range of IC Card-based services used by Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handsets. Make purchases using e-money or e-ticketing. Hold handset up to a reader/writer to pay for your purchase.

■ Osaifu-Keitai® Terms

Osaifu-Keitai®	A contactless IC Card technology to read/write data by holding an IC card up to a reader/writer
IC Card	An IC chip embedded in Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible handsets
Lifestyle-Appli	Applications to use Osaifu-Keitai®. Some applications are preinstalled.

Precautions

- Data saved in IC Card vary by service content and usage history. Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli. Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.
- SoftBank is not liable for damages from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.
- IC Card data can be misused if your Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handset is lost or stolen. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Downloading Lifestyle-Appli and using applications may incur high packet transmission charges.

Getting Started

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

Download Lifestyle-Appli via Internet website.

Registration/Settings

Activate Lifestyle-Appli to complete registration or customize settings.

- Make deposit into account, check payment records or balance, etc.

Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords/customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

Main Menu ► Tools ► Osaifu-Keitai ► Lifestyle-Appli

1 **Download** → YES

- 2 Select a Lifestyle-Appli
- Lifestyle-Appli is saved to Data Folder.

Note

- Alternatively, **Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Osaifu-Keitai ► Lifestyle-Appli ► Download ► YES**
or **Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Lifestyle-Appli ► Download ► YES**

Activating Lifestyle-Appli

- Lifestyle-Appli cannot be activated during a call or while another S! Appli is active.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Osaifu-Keitai ► Lifestyle-Appli

1 Select a Lifestyle-Appli

2 To exit,  → **Stopped**


Note

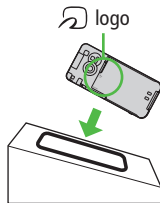
- Alternatively, **Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Osaifu-Keitai ► Lifestyle-Appli ► Select a Lifestyle-Appli**
or **Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Lifestyle-Appli ► Select a Lifestyle-Appli**

Reader/Writer Transactions



- Complete registration/settings and charge your account beforehand.
- There is no need to activate a Lifestyle-Appli during transaction.

1 Hold logo up to reader/writer

- When IC Card Notification Light ( P.18-10) is **ON**, Notification Light illuminates.
- Hold handset parallel to reader/writer.
Try moving handset around if recognition is slow.
- Check scan result on reader/writer display.
- Osaifu-Keitai[®] can be used during a call or Internet transmission. (May require extra time.)



Note


- Data may be unreadable if a metal object, etc. is between  logo and reader/writer.
- Even though Osaifu-Keitai[®] is available while handset is off, Lifestyle-Appli does not activate. However, if battery is left uncharged after warning tone sounds, Osaifu-Keitai[®] may become disabled. Charge battery beforehand.
- When handset is held up to reader/writer, handset may show a message or vibrate depending on service. S! Appli, Messaging or Internet may also activate automatically. To avoid such cases, set the functions not to activate during transactions ( P.18-25).

IC Card Lock

Activating IC Card Lock

<Default> OFF

- While set,  appears in Standby.

1 Press and hold  → Enter Phone Password

- To unlock, repeat operation.

Note

- Alternatively, **Main Menu** ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Osaifu-Keitai** ▶ **IC Card Settings** ▶ **IC Card Lock**
or **Main Menu** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security** ▶ **IC Card Lock**

Remote Lock



<Default> OFF

- Save up to three phone numbers to enable Remote Lock.

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Osaifu-Keitai** ▶ **IC Card Settings**
▶ **Remote Lock**

1 Enter Phone Password → **ON**

2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Numbers to Permit	Save numbers to activate Remote Lock > <Not Recorded> → Enter phone numbers →  [Return] • To save numbers from Phone Book/Incoming Call Logs or to use a payphone number:  [Menu] → Refer to or Payphone
# of Incoming Call	Specify the number of incoming calls for activating IC Card Lock > Enter a number

3  [Set]

Note

- Alternatively, **Main Menu** ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Osaifu-Keitai** ▶ **IC Card Settings** ▶ **Remote Lock**

Activating Remote Lock

- ① Call 942P from one of the specified numbers (Send Caller ID)
- ② Hang up after 942P receives the call
- ③ Repeat ①-② until specified number of incoming calls is reached (within three minutes)
 - After specified number of incoming calls, IC Card Lock is set and a message informs you IC Card Lock is activated.

Note

- When setting IC Card Lock, call 942P from the same specified phone number. Incoming calls from different phone numbers cannot be counted.
- Specified incoming calls may not be counted when Call Forwarding is active.
- Remote Lock is not available when ring time for Answer Phone is set to 0 or Driving Mode is active.
- When Answer Phone activates, counted number of incoming calls are reset.

Dictionary (Japanese)

Use ケータイTOOL<辞書> to access dictionaries (学研 辞スバ英和・和英辞書 and 学研 国語辞書).

- ケータイTOOL<辞書> is an S! Appli.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Dictionary



1 Read 免責 (disclaimer) → OK

ケータイTOOL<辞書> activates.

- To disable 免責:
Uncheck アプリ起動時に常に表示する。(Always show disclaimer when accessing dictionaries)

2 → Enter a word

Search results appear.



- To scroll pages: 
- To switch dictionaries: (1)/(3)
- To search again: [戻る]

3 Select a word

Definition appears.

4 To end, → Stopped

Note

- While Dictionary application is active, press [メニュー] for useful functions.
- Word search is available while composing messages or viewing sent/received messages or website contents ( P.14-9, P14-24, P.15-14).

Sound Recorders

Voice Recorder

Set recorded sounds for ringtones.

- Record for about 60 seconds each.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Sound Recorders ► Voice Recorder

1 **YES**

Recording starts.

2 [Stop] / / (→ **OK**) to stop recording

Recorded sounds are saved in Ring Songs&Tones folder.

Voice Announce

Set recorded sound for on hold tone/holding tone, Alarm, Calendar event alarm, Tasks alarm, ringtones, Answer Phone message, Timer Watching (Digital TV), Ring Songs&Tones Play List.

- Record only one item for about 15 seconds.
- Select **Voice Announce** in individual window to set Voice Announce as specific tone.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Sound Recorders ► Voice Announce

1 **Record**

Recording starts.

Tone beeps five seconds before recording ends.

2 [Stop] to end recording

Tone beeps twice and previous screen returns.

- To play back: **Play**
- To delete: **Erase** → **YES**

Bar Code Reader

Scan barcodes (JAN) or QR Codes with built-in camera.
Access websites, send messages, etc. from QR Codes.

JAN Codes

JAN Code is a one-dimensional bar code denoting numerals with bars and spaces of different widths.

QR Codes

QR Code is a two-dimensional bar code containing information.

Example: SoftBank mobile phones



Scanning Barcodes

- Up to five items can be saved.
- For split data, up to 16 QR Codes can be scanned at a time and saved as one item.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Bar Code Reader ▶ Scan Barcodes

- 1 Frame barcode in the center of Display
 - To adjust Display brightness: [Menu] → **Brightness** → Adjust to -3 (dark) - +3 (light)
 - To zoom:
 - To use Focus Lock:

2 [Start]

Scanning starts, and scanned results appear when completed.

- For split data, **OK** → Repeat Step 1 and 2
- To use scanned data: Step 2 on P.13-16

3 [Menu] → **Save result** → **OK**

- To start over: → **YES**

Note

- Handset cannot read barcodes or two-dimensional codes other than JAN/QR Codes.
- Some barcodes may be unreadable.
- Barcode recognition may be slow. Hold handset steady while scanning.
- Barcodes may not be correctly read owing to scratch, dirt, damage, quality of printed material, light reflection, or QR code version.

Viewing/Editing Scanned Data

Main Menu ► Tools ► Bar Code Reader
► Saved Data List

1 View

Select an item

Edit Title

Highlight an item → [Menu] → *Edit title* → Edit

Delete Saved Data

> In Step 1, (highlight an item → [Menu] → *Delete* → *Delete this* or *Delete all* (→ For *Delete all*, enter Phone Password) → *YES*

Using Scanned Data

Main Menu ► Tools ► Bar Code Reader
► Saved Data List

1 Select an item

2 [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Save result	Save scanned results
Display list	Display Saved Data List
Internet	Access website > <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> or <i>PC Site Browser</i> → <i>YES</i> ● Alternatively, select the URL.
Compose message	Insert address to message recipient field (From Step 4 on P.14-5) ● Alternatively, select the address.
Dialing	Call selected phone number > Select a dialing method → <i>Dial</i> ● Alternatively, select phone number.
Add to Phone Book	Save scanned results to Phone Book (From Step 2 on P.4-5)
Add bookmark	Save URL to Bookmark > <i>YES</i> → [OK]
Copy	Copy selected characters to another place (From Step 2 on P.3-9)

Pedometer

Use Pedometer to track distance walked or calories/fat burned.

Notes

- Set Date and Time to use Pedometer.
- Place handset in a pocket or compartment when carrying in a bag.

Using Pedometer

- Accurate results are obtained when steps are counted based on a fixed pace (100 to 120 steps per minute).
- Accuracy may be affected by walking style or other factors. Use Pedometer only as a rough indication.
- Steps are not counted for first few steps or after walking pace is changed. Pedometer starts counting after 10 steps or more.
- Steps are not counted while handset is off or software is being updated.
- Steps are not counted:
 - when bag swings against you, resulting in handset hitting your leg/waist; or any other irregular swinging movements (handset dangling from bag or pocket).
 - when walking slowly or dragging feet
 - during sports activities or jogging

Activating/Deactivating Pedometer

<Default> OFF

Main Menu ► Tools

1 Pedometer

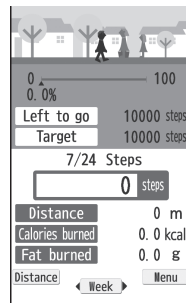
Pedometer window appears.

2 [Σ?][Menu] →

Pedometer setting → ON

Counting starts.

- To stop: **OFF**



Pedometer Window

Operations in Pedometer Window


Show Previous/Next Day	● View previous week/month or next week/month data while week/month view is open.
Toggle Daily/Weekly/Monthly	● Toggle: Day → Week → Month
Toggle Information	● Toggle: Steps → Distance → Calories → Fat
Toggle Views	● In week/month view, toggle: Text → List → Graph

Note

- Data is updated each time Pedometer window opens. While Pedometer window remains open, data is not updated.
- Pedometer record is saved every 15 minutes.
- Steps taken between 0:00 and 23:59 are recorded as that day's record. Handset saves up to 92 records.
- Pedometer record cannot be reset even when Pedometer setting is set to **OFF**. Set to **ON** to resume counting.

Pedometer Functions

In Pedometer window, press  [Menu] for following operations:

Item	Operation/Description
Pedometer setting	Activate/deactivate Pedometer > ON or OFF
User setting	Set weight and stride length. User information is used to calculate distance walked and calories/fat burned. > Enter weight → Enter stride length
Target steps	Set target steps per day > Enter target steps
Delete all records	> Enter Phone Password → YES
Add shortcut icon	Add shortcut to Standby ( P.1-21)

Note

- Entering target steps will automatically calculate other target values.

Messaging

Basics	14-2
Available Entry Items & Character Entry Limits.....	14-2
Messaging Folders & Memory Status.....	14-3
Customizing Handset Address.....	14-4
Sending S! Mail & SMS	14-4
Sending S! Mail.....	14-4
Sending SMS Messages.....	14-8
Creating Messages.....	14-9
Graphic Mail Functions.....	14-10
Sending Options.....	14-11
Receiving & Viewing Messages	14-12
Opening New Messages.....	14-12
Window Description.....	14-13
Retrieving Complete S! Mail.....	14-14
Opening & Saving Attachments.....	14-14
Showing Sent/Received Mail Address.....	14-15
Using Server Mail.....	14-15
Retrieving/Viewing Messages.....	14-16

Organizing/Using Messages	14-17
Checking Messages in Messaging Folders.....	14-17
Setting Filters (Auto-sort).....	14-17
Filter Spam.....	14-18
Replying to Messages.....	14-19
Using Mail Groups.....	14-20
Sent/Received Address.....	14-21
Organizing Messages.....	14-21
Using Messages.....	14-23
PC Mail	14-25
Messaging Folders.....	14-25
PC Mail Account Setup.....	14-26
Sending PC Mail.....	14-26
Retrieving/Viewing PC Mail.....	14-27
PC Mail Functions.....	14-27

Basics

Send messages via S! Mail, SMS or PC Mail.

S! Mail [Separate subscription required]	Exchange text messages with SoftBank or e-mail compatible handsets, PCs, etc.; attach image or sound files etc. <ul style="list-style-type: none">● 942P is compatible with Graphic Mail (☞ P.14-6) and AutoArt (☞ P.14-7).● Send/receive up to 2 MB messages.
SMS	Exchange short text messages with SoftBank handsets.
PC Mail [Setup required] (☞ P.14-25)	Send/receive messages via PC mail account.

- For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Operations while Using PC Mail

Setting PC Mail accounts creates account folders in Messaging Folders. S! Mail/SMS operations may change as a result (☞ P.14-25).

Note

- Messaging functions are also available in Viewer Position. Switching Normal Position to Viewer Position may end active screen.

Available Entry Items & Character Entry Limits

Item		S! Mail/PC Mail		SMS	
Address	E-mail address	Available	Up to 246 single-byte alphanumerics/ Up to 20 recipients	N/A	—
	Phone number ^{1,2}	Available		Available	Up to 21 single-byte alphanumerics/ Up to 1 recipient
Subject		Available	Up to 256 double-byte/ Up to 512 single-byte alphanumerics	N/A	—
Text		Available	30 KB	Available	Up to 70 double-/single-byte alphanumerics ³
Attachment		Available	^{4,5}	N/A	—

¹ SoftBank handset numbers only

² Phone numbers cannot be used for PC Mail address.

³ When text entry mode (☞ P.18-22) is set to **English (160char.)**, up to 160 single-byte alphanumerics can be entered.

⁴ Up to 2 MB S! Mail including subject, message text and attachment. Message size is changeable (Create Msg. Size: ☞ P.18-21)

⁵ Up to 1 MB PC Mail including subject, message text and attachment.

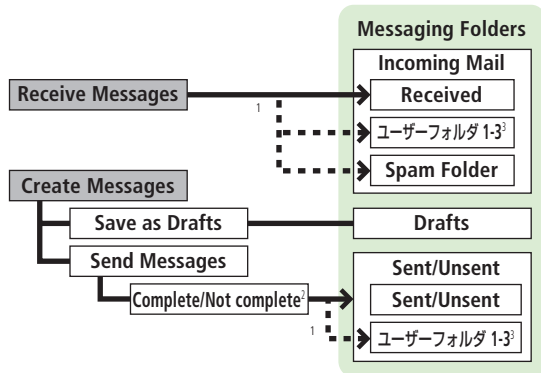
Note

- Character limit varies with attachment size.
- Change message type while creating a message (☞ P.14-10).

Messaging Folders & Memory Status

Messages are organized in folders by message type.

- PC Mail Folders: ☞ P.14-25



- ¹ Set Auto-sort messages to specified folders or Spam Folder automatically (☞ P.14-17, P.14-18).
- ² When handset is out-of-range or in Offline Mode, outgoing messages are saved as Unsent until signal becomes available (☞ Right).
- ³ Add up to ten folders (☞ P.14-21).

Auto Resend

When handset is out-of-range or in Offline Mode, unsent messages are saved as Unsent and protected from auto deletion.

When signal returns, messages are automatically sent. Once sent, messages are unprotected.

- To cancel Auto Resend: ☞ P.14-23, P.14-24
- When Auto Resend (☞ P.18-20) is set to **OFF**, unsent messages are not automatically sent. However, messages saved as Unsent while Auto Resend was active are sent automatically.

Deleting Messages Automatically

When memory for messaging folders is low, old messages are automatically deleted one by one. Protect important messages from unintentional deletion (☞ P.14-22), or set message deletion settings (☞ P.18-20) to **OFF**. Messages in Drafts and SMS on USIM Card are not deleted automatically.

When Messaging Memory is Full

☞ (Received Full) appears in Standby and no more new incoming messages are received. Delete old messages in Incoming Mail folder (☞ P.14-23), then retrieve new messages (☞ P.14-16).

View Memory Status

> ☞ → *Memory Status*

Tip

- Mail Security (☞ P.12-11)

Customizing Handset Address

Change your handset mail address (alphanumerics before @) to reduce the risk of receiving spam. Default account name is random alphanumerics.

abc123-xyz @ softbank.ne.jp
 [Account] [Domain]
 Name Name
 (Customize here)

- For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).
- Handset mail address cannot be changed in Offline Mode.
- For operations while using Internet: P.15-7

1 → **Settings** → **Custom Mail Address**

Handset connects to the Network.
 Follow onscreen instructions.

Sending S! Mail & SMS

Sending S! Mail

- Text entry (P.3-2)

Example: Select a Phone Book entry to send S! Mail.

1 Press and hold Mail size

Address field
 Subject field
 Attachment field
 Text field

Composition Window

2 Select Address field → **Phone Book**

3 Select a Phone Book entry → Select a SoftBank handset number or mail address

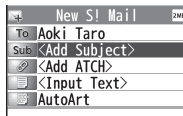
- Press to toggle tabs if both mail addresses and phone numbers are saved.

4 Select Subject field →
Enter subject

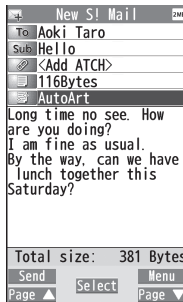
5 Select Text field

6 Enter text

7  [Send]



Text Entry Window



Note

- Alternatively,  → **Create New** to open Composition window
- Messages are automatically resent when within range.

Tip

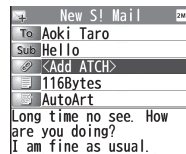
- Addresses ● Additional Functions (☞ P.14-9)
- Sending Options (☞ P.14-11)
- Settings** ● Request Delivery Confirmation ● Outgoing Mail Notification
 - Auto Resend Unsent Messages (☞ P.18-20)
 - Set Reply-to Address ● Auto Signature (☞ P.18-21)

Adding Attachments

1 After Step 6 (left), select Attachment field

2 Select a folder in Data Folder →
Select a file

3  [Send]



■ Capture Pictures/Videos to Attach

- > After Step 1, **Activate Camera** → **Photo mode** or **Video mode** →
Frame subject →  [Record],  or  (→ For video,
 [Stop],  or  →  [Save],  or 

Note

- Some files can not be attached depending on the file format or size.
- Some copy protected files can not be sent.
- Attachments exceeding size limit are automatically compressed. (Width and height of compressed images may change.) If the compressed file still exceeds maximum size, message cannot be sent.
- Ring Songs&Tones, Music and Videos files cannot be attached directly from microSD Card. Move files to handset before attaching to messages.

Tip

- Attachments (📎 P.14-9)
- Settings** ● Attachment Size (📎 P.18-20)

Graphic Mail

Create HTML messages; select font color/size, background color, or insert images, etc.

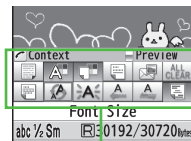
Example: Use various Templates to create Graphic Mail.

- Change font size
 - Scroll text
- 1 After Step 4 on P.14-5, [Menu] → **Load Template** → Highlight a template → [View] → [Select]
 - To return to Template list: [Back]

2 Select Text field → Delete "ここに文章をいれてね！"

3 [Enter] → **Font Size**

- Alternatively, [Menu] → **Set Graphic Mail** to open Graphic Palette



Graphic Palette

4 Select a font size → Enter text

5 [Enter] → **Select area**



6 Place cursor before a sentence to scroll → [Start] → Move cursor to end of sentence → [End]

Text is highlighted.

- To cancel selection: [End]



7 **Set Scrolling** → [Exit]

8 (/) to preview →

- Alternatively, [Menu] → **Preview** to view text field



9 [Set] → [Send]

Reset Operations

> To cancel previous operation: Close Graphic Palette → [Menu] → **Undo**

> To reset all Graphic Mail operations: → **Graphic all reset** → **YES** → **YES**

Use Mail Art

> In text entry window, → **Mail Art** → Select an item → [Exit]

Use Files Saved in microSD Card

> In text entry window, → **Insert files** → **File Select** → Select a folder → [microSD] → Select a folder → Select a file

Tip

- Use Other Graphic Mail Settings (P.14-10)
- Download Templates via Internet (P.14-11)

AutoArt

AutoArt converts S! Mail to HTML mail and automatically adds pictographs and background color.

- To change font size/color by AutoArt: P.18-21

1 After Step 6 on P.14-5, **AutoArt** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Automatic	Automatically adds art
Happy, Sad, Like, Angry or Surprised	Automatically adds art corresponding to the selected mood

Converted message appears.

- To cycle next/previous selections: [Next]/ [Prev.]
- To cancel and return to Composition window: →

2 [Set] → [Send]

Note

- Alternatively, [Menu] → **AutoArt** in Composition window after entering text
- Use AutoArt to automatically add art in Graphic Mail.
- AutoArt cannot be canceled after pressing [Set] in Step 2.

Tip

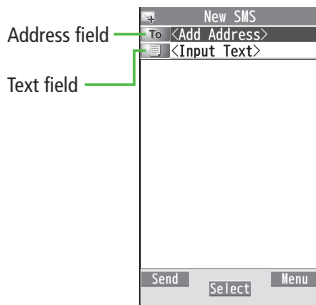
- Set Preference for Amount of Pictographs in AutoArt
- Background Color Function (AutoArt) (P.18-21)

Sending SMS Messages

- Text entry (☞ P.3-2)

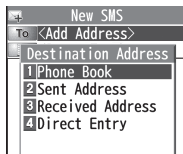
Example: Select a Phone Book entry to send SMS.

- 1  →
Create New SMS



Composition Window

- 2 Select Address field →
Phone Book



- 3 Select a Phone Book entry →
Select a SoftBank handset number

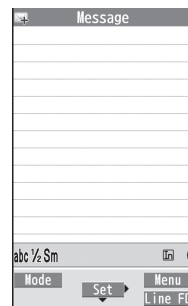


- 4 Select Text field

- 5 Enter text

- When number of entered character exceeds limit, S! Mail conversion option message appears.

- 6  [Send]



Text Entry Window

Note

- When a single-byte text message including | { } [] ^ is sent or a draft including such text is edited, some characters may be cut out of text field.
- Messages are automatically resent when within range.

Tip

- Addresses ● Additional Functions (☞ P.14-9)
- Request Delivery Confirmation ● Outgoing Mail Notification
- Auto Resend Unsent Messages (☞ P.18-20)
- Change SMS Center Number ● Default Text Entry Language (☞ P.18-22)

Creating Messages

Addresses

From ► Composition window, select Address field

■ Enter Address Directly

- > S! Mail: **Enter Mail Address** or **Enter Phone Number** → Enter a mail address/SoftBank handset number
- > SMS: **Direct Entry** → Enter a SoftBank handset number

■ Select Address from Sent Address/Received Address Logs





- > **Sent Address** or **Received Address** → Select a log →  [Select]

■ Select S! Mail Address from Mail Group

- > **Mail Group** → Select a Mail Group



■ Add/Edit/Delete Address

- > Follow the steps (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Add recipients*	> <Not entered> → Search/enter address → Select an address or enter directly →  [Finish]
Edit	> S! Mail: Select an address → Edit → Edit address →  [Finish] > SMS: Select an address → Direct Entry → Edit address
Delete*	> Highlight an address →  [Menu] → Delete receiver → YES →  [Finish]

* S! Mail only

■ Change To/Cc/Bcc (S! Mail only)

- > Highlight an address →  [Menu] → **Destination types** → Select a type →  [Finish]




Attachments

From ► After attaching a file, select Attachment field


■ Open/Play Attached Files

- > Select a file

■ Add Attachments






- >  [Menu] → **Add Attached Files** → Select a folder → Select a file →  [Finish]
- To capture still images or videos to attach:  P.14-5

■ Delete Attachments

- > Highlight a file →  [Menu] → **Del Attached Files** → YES





Additional Functions

■ Look Up Words from Text Entry Window

- > In S! Mail text entry window,  [Menu] → **Look up in dict.**
 - Move cursor before/after word →  [Start] →  to highlight the word →  [End] → Read disclaimer → OK
- Dictionary operations:  P.13-13

■ Functions Available in Composition Window

> In Composition window,  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)


Item	Operation/Description
Send	Send message
Preview	Preview message
AutoArt ¹	( P.14-7)
Save as Drafts	Save message to Drafts without sending
Attached files ¹	View attached file list
Load Template ¹	> Select a template
Save Template ¹	Save edited template > YES
Add Signature ¹	Add signature ● Create and save signature beforehand ( P.18-21).
Send Settings ¹	( P.14-11)
Image Compression ¹	Set image compression size for attachment > Select a size or OFF
Create Msg. Size ¹	300KB or 2MB
Confirm Delivery ²	( P.14-11)
Input character ²	Select character input mode > Japanese or English
Change mail type	Switch mail type > Select an item








¹ S! Mail only

² SMS only


Graphic Mail Functions

■ Use Other Graphic Mail Settings


> In S! Mail text entry window,  → Select an arrange item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Insert files	Insert still images, music or Flash® files; activate Camera and insert captured image Music files are sent as BGM > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · File Select → Select a file type → Select a folder → Select a file · Camera → Frame subject →  [Record] →  [Save] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To delete inserted music files: Delete BGM → YES
Font Color	> Change font color
Background color	> Change background color
Insert Lines	Insert separator line
Mail Art	Insert Mail Art > Select a file
Graphic all reset	Cancel all Graphic Mail Settings > YES
Select area	Specify text to be arranged > Place cursor before/after text →  [Start] →  to highlight area →  [End] → Select other items → Follow the steps for selected items ● To cancel selection:  [End] → 
Font Size	> Change font size

Item	Operation/Description
Select Blinking	Flash text
Set Scrolling	Scroll text
Set Swinging	Swing text
Alignment	> Select a type

- One file of music or Flash®, and up to 40 types of My Pictograms or images can be inserted per Graphic Mail.
- To delete inserted images, lines, Mail Art, etc.: Close Graphic Palette → Move cursor before images, etc. → 
- Ring Songs&Tones or Music files cannot be inserted directly from microSD Card. Move files to handset beforehand.

■ Save Edited Templates

- > In S! Mail Composition window,  [Menu] → *Save Template* → **YES**

■ Download Templates via Internet

- >  → *Templates* → *Download Templates* → **YES**
- Handset connects to the Network. Follow onscreen instructions.

Sending Options

From ► Composition window,  [Menu]

■ Confirm Delivery

- > (For S! Mail, *Send Settings* →) *Confirm Delivery* → **ON**
- Request Delivery Confirmation ( P.18-20)

■ Notify Recipients of Message Priority Level (S! Mail only)

- > *Send Settings* → *Priority* → Select a level

■ Set Reply-to Address (S! Mail only)

- > *Send Settings* → *Set Reply-To* → **ON**
- Specify reply-to address beforehand. ( P.18-21)

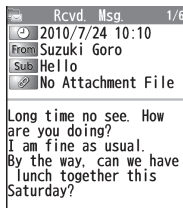
Receiving & Viewing Messages

Retrieving S! Mail Automatically

Auto Download retrieves up to 1 MB messages. Transmission fees are incurred; adjust to use. (To disable Auto Download/limit message size for Auto Download: P.18-21)

Opening New Messages

When a new message is received, and Information window opens in Standby.



Message Window

1 In Information window, **New message**

Newest message appears.

- Press to show previous/next message.

Note

- If an incoming S! Mail has more than one recipient, select **Display Address** in Message window to view recipient list.
- Handset may connect to the Network via URL link in message text. Data-intensive web pages may incur high charges.
- Incoming message window may not appear; message tone and Notification Light may not always sound/illuminate.
 - flashes to inform of a new message.
- Information window disappears even when an unread message other than latest message is selected.

Tip

- Setting Secret Mail (P.12-11)
- Retrieving/Viewing Messages (P.14-16)

Settings

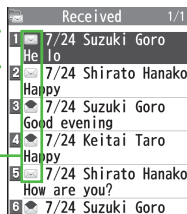
- Ringtone ● Ringer Volume ● New Message Ringtone Duration
- Vibration (P.18-2)
- Set Notification Light by Incoming Type (Voice/Video Calls or Messages) (P.18-10)
- Show/Hide Incoming Mail Notification ● Incoming Mail Display (P.18-20)
- Maximum Incoming Message Size ● Limit Auto-retrieval by Message Type (P.18-21)

Window Description

Messaging Folder Contents

Received Date & Time¹,
Sender² and S! Mail Subject
(For SMS, Message Text)

- For Sent/Unsent, following appear:
 - ¹ Sent date/time
 - ² Recipient

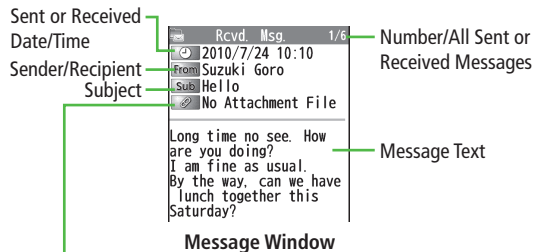


Example: Received Folder in Incoming Mail

Message Type/Status

Message Type	Message Status
/ Unread/Read S! Mail	Attachments
/ Unread/Read S! Mail Notice	(Silver) Protected
/ Unread/Read SMS	Forwarded Message
/ Unread/Read USIM Card SMS	Replied Message
Forwarded Server Mail	Failed (Sent/Unsent Message)
	Resend Scheduled
	New Delivery Report (Sent/Unsent Message)
	High Priority
	Low Priority

Message Contents



Number of Attachments

The number of files (images, sounds, videos, text, etc.) appears.

Note

- Status indicators for forwarded/replied SMS messages (saved in USIM Card) do not appear.
- After retrieving complete messages, S! Mail Notice icons with (Forwarded) or (Replied) change to / (S! Mail).
- Messages remain protected after complete messages are retrieved via protected S! Mail Notices.
- If messages on microSD Card do not appear correctly (P.10-20), copy messages to handset (P.10-21) and execute Charset Conversion (P.14-24).

Tip

- Functions Available from Message List (P.14-22)
- Functions Available in Received/Sent Message Window (P.14-23)

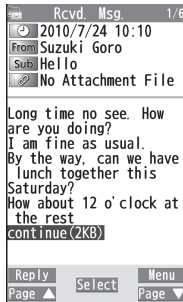
Settings ● Font Size (P.18-20)

Retrieving Complete S! Mail

The complete message may not be downloaded during handset operations. Center sends initial portion of message as an S! Mail Notice. Manually retrieve the complete message.

- 1 Select **continue (xxxKB)** at end of S! Mail Notice

- (xxxKB) is an estimated Server Mail size; may differ from actual message size.



■ Retrieve from Message List

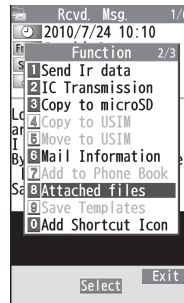
> In received message list, [Menu] → **Retrieve** → **This one**

■ Retrieve Multiple Messages

> In received message list, [Menu] → **Retrieve** → **Selected** → Check messages → [Finish] → **YES**

Opening & Saving Attachments

- 1 In Message window, [Menu] → **Attached files**
- 2 Select a file
File plays or shows.
- 3 After viewing, [Exit] Attached files window returns.
- 4 To save the file, highlight file → [Save] → **YES** → Select a folder



Note

- When messages are opened, attached image files appear/play automatically.
- (Silver) appears with file requiring a Content Key. If Content Key has expired, warning appears when opening a file. Acquire new Content Key (P.10-5).
- Incompatible files are saved to Other Documents in Data Folder. Some files may not be saved to handset.


File Formats Supported by Auto Playback

- Image files (JPEG, GIF, PNG)
- Music files (SMAF, AMR, SMF, SP-MIDI)


Tip


Settings ● Auto-play Attached Music Files (P.18-21)


Showing Sent/Received Mail Address


- Sent Address**
Press and hold 







Received Address

Press and hold 

 **SMS** : SMS (successfully sent)

 **MAIL** : S! Mail (successfully sent)

- To show Redial/Incoming Call Logs:  **[Change]**

- To view entry details, select an entry
 - To send S! Mail/SMS to recipient shown:   → Mail composition operation (S! Mail:  From Step 4 on P.14-5 or SMS:  From Step 4 on P.14-8)
 - To save to Phone Book:  **[Store]** → Operation for saving to Phone Book ( From Step 2 on P.4-5)



Tip

- Sent/Received Address ( P.14-21)

Using Server Mail

Retrieve mail list stored at the Center to view Server Mail.

Viewing Server Mail List


-  → *Server Mail*
 - Retrieve Mail List* → **YES**
- **Update Server Mail List**
> After Step 1, *Retrieve Mail List* →  **[Update]** → **YES**

Retrieving Server Mail

-  → *Server Mail* → *Retrieve Mail List*
 - If no Server Mail is in the list, **YES** → **OK**
 - Retrieve a New Message**
Select an S! Mail
Retrieve Multiple Messages
 **[Menu]** → *Retrieve* → *Retrieve Selected* →
Check messages →  **[Finish]** → **YES**
- **Retrieve All Messages**
>  → *Server Mail* → *Retrieve All*

Deleting Server Mail


1  → *Server Mail* → *Retrieve Mail List*

2  [Menu] → *Del Server Mail*

3 **Delete a Message**

Delete This → **YES**

Delete Multiple Messages

Delete Selected → Check messages →  [Finish]
→ **YES**

Delete All Messages

>  → *Server Mail* → *Delete All* → Enter Phone Password → **YES**

Tip

- Mail Security (📖 P.12-11)
- Server Mail Functions (📖 Right)

Retrieving/Viewing Messages

Manually Retrieving New Messages

Retrieve S! Mail messages saved on Server while handset is off/out-of-range.




>  → *Retrieve New*

Server Mail functions

From ▶  ▶ **Server Mail**

Forward Server Mail


> *Retrieve Mail List* → Highlight a message →  [Menu] →
Fwd Server Mail → Select Address field → Search/enter address →
Select an address or enter directly →  [Send]

- To forward Server Mail from S! Mail Notice: In Message list, highlight S! Mail Notice →  [Menu] → *Forward* → *Fwd Server Mail* → *<Add Address>* → Select/enter and address →  [Send]
- Forwarded S! Mail messages remain in Message List.
-  appears for forwarded messages in Drafts or Sent/Unsent.

Sort Server Mail

> *Retrieve Mail List* →  [Menu] → *Sort* → Select a condition

View Server Mail Information

> *Retrieve Mail List* → Highlight a message →  [Menu] →
Mail Information

View Server Mail Memory


> *Server Mail Memory*

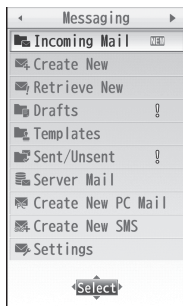
Organizing/Using Messages

Checking Messages in Messaging Folders


- At time of purchase, information message is provided for your convenience (Transmission fee does not apply).

1 → **Incoming Mail, Drafts, Sent/Unsent**

- **NEW** appears for unread messages in Incoming Mail folder.
! appears for draft or unsent messages in Drafts or Sent/Unsent folder.
- In Incoming Mail or Sent/Unsent folder, select a folder then message.
- Messaging Folders:  P.14-3



2 Select a message

- To toggle previous/next messages in Received/Sent Message window: 

Tip

- Functions Available in Incoming Mail or Sent/Unsent Folder ( P.14-21)
- Functions Available from Message List ( P.14-22)

Setting Filters (Auto-sort)

Filter messages into folders by criteria.

- Previously sent/received messages are not filtered.
- When a message meets multiple criteria, message is filtered according to following priority:
Subject → Address → Mail Group → Phone Book group
- Set up to 30 criteria per folder.

1 → **Incoming Mail** or **Sent/Unsent**

2 Highlight a folder → [Menu] → **Auto-sort Setting**

3 [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Add Subject	Filter messages by subject > Enter a subject ● SMS cannot be sorted by subject.
Add Address	Filter messages by address > Search/enter address → Select/enter an address
Add Group	Filter messages by Group in Phone Book > Select a group
Add Mail group	Filter messages by Mail Group > Select a Mail Group

Edit Sort Conditions


- > After Step 2, highlight an item →  [Edit] → Edit subject, address, Group or Mail Group

Change Auto-sort List View

Switch Name view or Address view for Auto-sort.


> After Step 2,  [Menu] → *Address Display* → *Name* or *Address*

Delete Auto-sort Settings

> After Step 2, (highlight an item →)  [Menu] → *Delete* or *Delete All* (→ For *Delete All*, enter Phone Password) → *YES*

Re-sort Set Folders

> To re-sort messages in a specific folder: In Step 2, highlight a folder →  [Menu] → *Re-sort in This* → *YES*

> To re-sort messages in all folders: After Step 1,  [Menu] → *Sort in All* → *YES*

Filter Spam


Sort messages from unknown senders into Spam Folder without incoming notification. Use Safe List to receive messages from certain addresses/phone numbers and domains.

Note

- Messages from secret Phone Book entries may be sorted into Spam Folder. Be careful when deleting messages from Spam Folder.


Setting Spam Folder

<Default> OFF


- 1  → *Settings* → *Universal Settings* → *Anti-Spam Measures*
- 2 *Spam Filter* → Enter Phone Password
- 3 *ON* → *YES*

Safe List

- Specify up to 20 addresses and domains (for example, @softbank.ne.jp) to receive messages from without sorting into Spam Folder.

1  → **Settings** → **Universal Settings** → **Anti-Spam Measures** → **Safe List**

2 Add Addresses

 [Menu] → **Add Address** → **Received Address** or **Direct Entry** → Select or enter an address

Add Domains


 [Menu] → **Add Domain** → Enter a domain

3  [Finish]

■ Edit Saved Addresses

> After Step 1, highlight an address →  [Edit] → Edit address

■ Delete Addresses

> After Step 1, (highlight an address →)  [Menu] → **Delete** or **Delete All** (→ For **Delete All**, enter Phone Password) → **YES**


Tip

- Report Spam ( P.14-24)

Replying to Messages

1 In Message window,  [Reply]

Re: appears before Subject when replying to S! Mail. Received message text is quoted.

- Replying to S! Mail with multiple recipients: In Message window,  [Reply] → **Reply to Sender** or **Reply to All**




2 Complete message →  [Send]

■ Reply without Quoting

> In Message window,  [Menu] → **Reply** → **Reply to Sender** or **Reply to All** → **Compose S! Mail** or **Compose SMS**

- Selectable items differ by mail type.

Note

- Alternatively, reply from Message List window without opening messages ( P.14-22).

Tip

- Quote Original Message in Reply ( P.18-20)

Using Mail Groups

Save mail addresses by group. Messages can be sent to specified group of recipients.

- Save up to 20 recipients per group.
- Create up to 20 groups.

Creating Mail Groups

Main Menu ► Phone ► Settings ► Mail Group

1 Select a group to save

2 Enter Mail Address Directly

Highlight <Not stored> →

✉ [Edit] → Enter mail address

Select Mail Address from Phone

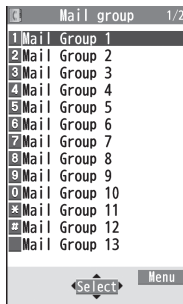
Book or Sent/Received Address Logs

Highlight <Not stored> →

⌘ [Menu] → *Look-up address*

→ Select an item → Select an entry

- Repeat Step 2 to save mail addresses.



Mail Group List

Change Group Names

> In Step 1, highlight a Mail Group → ⌘ [Menu] →

Edit group name → Edit name

Reset Group Names

> In Step 1, highlight a Mail Group → ⌘ [Menu] →

Reset group name → YES

Edit Mail Addresses

> After Step 1, highlight a mail address → ✉ [Edit] → Edit

Delete Saved Mail Addresses

> After Step 1, (highlight a mail address →) ⌘ [Menu] →





Delete this or *Delete all* (→ For *Delete all*, enter Phone Password) → YES






Send a Message to All Group Members

> In Step 1, highlight a Mail Group → ✉ [✉]

- To select a Mail Group from S! Mail Composition window: 📄 P.14-9

Sent/Received Address

- > Sent address logs: Press and hold  → Highlight an address →  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)
- > Received address logs: Press and hold  → Highlight an address →  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Character size	Toggle font sizes
Add to Phone Book	Save selected mail address/number to Phone Book ( From Step 2 on P.4-5)
Add shortcut icon	Create a shortcut ( P.1-21) Select a shortcut in Standby to open Composition window with selected mail address/number in Address field
Compose message	Create a message to selected address/phone number ( From Step 4 on P.14-5)
Compose SMS	Create SMS to selected phone number ( From Step 4 on P.14-8)
Dialing	> Select a dialing method → <i>Dial</i>
Dialed calls¹	Show Redial logs
Received calls²	Show Incoming Call Logs
Delete this	> YES
Delete selected	> Check logs to be deleted →  [Finish] → YES
Delete all	> Enter Phone Password → YES


¹ Sent address logs only

² Received address logs only

Organizing Messages



■ Functions Available in Incoming Mail or Sent/Unsent Folder










- >  → *Incoming Mail* or *Sent/Unsent* → (Highlight a folder →)
-  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)









Item	Operation/Description
Add folder	Add up to 10 user folders to each of Incoming Mail and Sent/Unsent folders > Enter folder name
Edit folder name*	> Edit folder name
Auto-sort Setting*	> Sort messages ( From Step 3 on P.14-17)
Re-sort in This	Re-sort messages in selected folder > YES
Sort in All	Re-sort messages in all folders > YES
Sort folder*	Sort user folders > Select a target location
Mail Security	Set to require Phone Password for opening a folder > Enter Phone Password ● To cancel: repeat the step
Delete folder*	> Enter Phone Password → YES

* ユーザーフォルダ³ only

■ Functions Available from Message List

>  → *Incoming Mail, Drafts* or *Sent/Unsent* (→ Select a folder) → Highlight a message →  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Edit ²	Edit message to send (S! Mail:  From Step 2 on P.14-4/SMS:  From Step 2 on P.14-8)
Send ²	Send Drafts
Retrieve ³	Retrieve complete S! Mail > This one or Selected (→ For Selected , check messages →  [Finish] → YES)
Reply ³	Reply without quoting message > Reply to Sender or Reply to All → Select an item → Compose a message (S! Mail:  From Step 4 on P.14-5/SMS:  From Step 4 on P.14-8) ● Selectable items differ by mail type.
Reply with Quote ³	Quote received message to reply > Reply to Sender or Reply to All → Select an item → Compose a message (S! Mail:  From Step 4 on P.14-5/SMS:  From Step 4 on P.14-8) ● Selectable items differ by mail type.
Forward ³	> Forward or Fwd Server Mail → Select Address field → Search/enter address → Select an address or enter directly →  [Send] ● Forward Server Mail ( P.14-16) ● When forwarding S! Mail, Fw: appears before Subject. Dotted line appears in the first line of Text field. ● Attachments are also forwarded. (Messages with copy protected attachments may not be forwardable.)

Item	Operation/Description
Mail history ^{1 3}	Show up to 1000 sent/received mail records > Select a sender/recipient address ●  or  appears. ● Select a record to show Message window. Press  to return to previous window.
Dial	> Select an item → Make a call/compose a message/add to Phone Book
Add Address ^{1 3}	Save addresses to Phone Book > Select phone number or mail address → YES ( From Step 2 on P.4-5)
Protect/Unprotect ^{1 3}	Protect received/sent messages > This one or Selected (→ For Selected , check messages →  [Finish]) ● To unprotect: Repeat the step ● SMS saved in USIM Card cannot be deleted.
Move ^{1 3}	Move messages to specific folders > Move This or Move Selected (→ For Move Selected , check messages →  [Finish] → YES) → Select a folder ● SMS saved in USIM Card cannot be moved.
Delete	> Select an item → Operate selected item ● If messages are received while selecting multiple messages, message deletion may fail.
Confirm Delivery ¹	View Delivery report
Send Ir data	( P.11-3)
IC Transmission	( P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy messages to microSD Card > YES

Item	Operation/Description
Copy to USIM/Copy to Phone³	Copy SMS to USIM Card/handset > YES
Move to USIM/Move to Phone³	Move SMS to USIM Card/handset > YES
Mail Information	View detailed information (Subject, From, To, etc.)
Unread/Read³	Switch status to Unread/Read
Release Resending¹	Cancel Auto Resend
Sort	Change display order > Select a display order

¹ Sent messages only











² Drafts only

³ Received messages only

Using Messages

■ Functions Available in Received/Sent Message Window

> In Message window,  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Retrieve¹	Retrieve complete S! Mail
Edit²	Edit message to send (S! Mail:  From Step 2 on P.14-4/SMS:  From Step 2 on P.14-8)
Reply¹	Reply without quoting message > Reply to Sender or Reply to All → Select an item → Compose a message (S! Mail:  From Step 4 on P.14-5/SMS:  From Step 4 on P.14-8) ● Selectable items differ by mail type.
Reply with Quote¹	Quote received message to reply > Reply to Sender or Reply to All → Select an item → Compose a message (S! Mail:  From Step 4 on P.14-5/SMS:  From Step 4 on P.14-8) ● Selectable items differ by mail type.
Forward¹	> Forward or Fwd Server Mail ● Forward Server Mail ( P.14-16)
Mail history	Show up to 1000 sent/received mail records > Select a sender/recipient address ●  or  appears. ● Select a record to show Message window. Press  to return to previous window.
Dial	> Select an item → Make a call/compose a message/add to Phone Book

Item	Operation/Description
Add Address	Save addresses to Phone Book > Select phone number or mail address → YES (☞ From Step 2 on P.4-5)
Protect/Unprotect	Protect received/sent messages <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To unprotect, repeat the step. ● SMS saved in USIM Card cannot be deleted.
Move	Move messages to specific folders > Select a folder <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● SMS saved in USIM Card cannot be moved.
Delete	> Select an item → Operate selected item
Confirm Delivery²	View Delivery report
Send Ir data	(☞ P.11-3)
IC Transmission	(☞ P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy messages to microSD Card > YES
Copy to USIM/Copy to Phone¹	Copy SMS to USIM Card/handset > YES
Move to USIM/Move to Phone¹	Move SMS to USIM Card/handset > YES
Mail Information	View detailed information (Subject, From, To, etc.)
Release Resending²	Cancel Auto Resend

Item	Operation/Description
Add to Phone Book	Save highlighted phone number/mail address to Phone Book > YES (☞ From Step 2 on P.4-5)
Attached files	Show attached files
Save Templates	Save edited templates > YES
Add Shortcut Icon	Create a shortcut (☞ P.1-21). Select a shortcut in Standby to open Composition window with selected mail address/number in Address field
Copy	Copy address, subject or text Select an item → Copy (☞ From Step 2 on P.3-9)
Look up in dict.	Look up a word in dictionary > Move cursor before/after text → [Start] → to highlight target area → [End] → Read disclaimer → OK <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Dictionary operations (☞ P.13-13)
Font Size	> Select a size
Scroll Unit	Change scroll unit > Select an item
Charset Conversion¹	Convert characters when not properly shown > Select an item
Report Spam¹	Report received mail as Spam > [Send] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Change destination to report to (☞ P.18-20).

¹ Received Message window only

² Sent Message window only

PC Mail

Send/receive messages via PC mail account. Set PC mail account in advance.

- Set Yahoo! Mail address: P.14-26

Notes

- Receiving PC Mail for the first time after setting PC mail account may incur high packet transmission fees.
- Using auto-receive settings may incur high packet transmission fees. Be careful when using handset abroad.
- Checking for new messages may slow down other functions.
- Checking for new messages incurs packet transmission fees even when no new messages are received.
- Single-byte katakana and pictographs are not supported in PC Mail.
- PC Mail Account set to handset is not deleted when inserting a different USIM Card.

Using S! Mail/SMS with PC Mail

S! Mail/SMS operations may change after PC mail account setup.

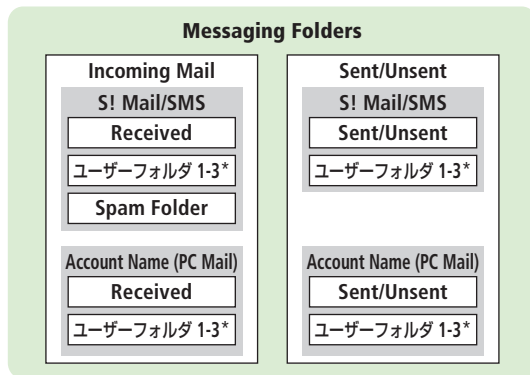
Example:

- To create S! Mail: Press and hold → **S! Mail**
- To attach files to S! Mail: Highlight a file → **Attach to message** → **S! Mail**
- To view received messages: → **Incoming Mail** → **S! Mail/SMS**
→ Select a folder → Select a message

Messaging Folders

PC Mail folders are added in Incoming Mail and Sent/Unsent folders once account setup is complete.

- Create up to three PC Mail folders.
- PC Mail is not sorted as Spam Mail.



* Add up to 10 ユーザーフォルダ (user folders): P.14-21

Note

- Functions available in S! Mail/SMS (Auto-sort Setting, Mail Security, etc.) are also available in PC Mail (Some unavailable functions do not appear in menu).

PC Mail Account Setup

Set up accounts to use PC Mail.

- Set up to three PC mail accounts.
- Check ISP information in advance.
- PC Mail services may not be available depending on services, settings, contract details for PC mail account.
- **Set Quick Yahoo! Mail** is available for setting your Yahoo! account.

1 → **Settings** → **PC Mail Settings** → **Account Settings**

2 **<Not Recorded>** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Account Name	> Enter an account name
Incoming Options	> Select an item → Enter/select an item ● User Name , Password and Receiving Server are required.
Sending Options	> Select an item → Enter/select an item ● Mail Address and Sender Server are required.

- To confirm settings: In Incoming Options/Sending Options window, [Conf.] →
- After information is entered in Incoming Options/Sending Options, to return to Account Settings window.

3 [Finish] → **OK**

- To retrieve new messages immediately, select **YES**

Quick Yahoo! Mail Address Setup

- > After Step 1, **Set Quick Yahoo! Mail** → **YES** or **NO**
- Follow onscreen instructions.

Set Default Account

- > After Step 1, highlight an account → [Menu] → **Default account**
- ★ appears for selected account.

Delete Account

- > After Step 1, highlight an account → [Menu] → **Delete account** → Enter Phone Password → **YES**

Tip

- Reset All Incoming Message Logs ● Delete All Server Mail (P.14-27)

Sending PC Mail

- Default account (Above) is automatically selected.

1 Press and hold Account field → **PC Mail**
PC Mail Composition window appears.

2 Compose a message and send (From Step 2 on P.14-4)

PC Mail Composition Window

Change Account

- > After Step 1, select Account field → Select an account

Note

- Alternatively, open PC Mail Composition window from → **Create New PC Mail**

Retrieving/Viewing PC Mail

- If auto-retrieve setting is on, open new PC Mail from Information:

☞ P.14-12

PC Mail Indicators



Unread/read PC Mail



Unread/read PC Mail (notice only)

Note

- When Center sends initial portion of PC Mail, manually retrieve the complete message.

Retrieving PC Mail by Account

- 1  → **Retrieve New** → Select an account

Viewing Previously Retrieved PC Mail

- 1  → **Incoming Mail** → Select an account → Select a message

Tip


- Settings** ●Auto-retrieve for New Messages ●Set Auto-retrieve Interval/Condition ●Auto-retrieve (while Abroad) ●Disable Auto-retrieval between Set Time Period (☞ P.18-22)

PC Mail Functions

Attach Image/Music Files

- > Highlight a file →  [Menu] → **Attach to message** → **PC Mail** → Compose a message and send (☞ From Step 2 on P.14-4)

Reset All Incoming Message Logs

- >  → **Settings** → **PC Mail Settings** → **Account Settings** → Select an account → **Server Maintenance** → **Reset Mail Log** → **YES**

Delete All Server Mail

- >  → **Settings** → **PC Mail Settings** → **Account Settings** → Select an account → **Server Maintenance** → **Delete All** → Enter Phone Password → **YES**

Note

- If over 10001 messages are on your PC mail server, retrieving/deleting messages from that PC Mail account is disabled.

Getting Started	15-2
Using Yahoo! Keitai	15-4
Opening Yahoo! Keitai Menu	15-4
Web Search	15-4
Entering URL	15-4
Using Access Histories	15-5
Exiting Mobile Internet	15-5
Browsing PC Sites	15-5
Opening Menu	15-5
Web Search	15-6
Entering URL	15-6
Using Access Histories	15-6
Exiting Internet	15-6
Basic Operations	15-7
Using Cursor	15-7
Text Entry & Item Selection	15-8
Using Information	15-9
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	15-9
Managing Bookmarks & Saved Pages	15-10
Bookmarks/Saved Pages Functions	15-11
Downloading Image/Sound Files	15-12
Using Number, Address or URL	15-12
Streaming	15-13
Option Menu Items	15-14

Getting Started

Access Yahoo! Keitai Mobile Internet and PC sites.

"Yahoo! Keitai" is both a SoftBank Mobile Internet service and the SoftBank Mobile Internet portal.

View PC Internet websites via PC Site Browser and Direct Browser.

Internet

Yahoo! Keitai

- View Mobile Internet Websites (☞ P.15-4)
- Download image/sound files, etc. (☞ P.15-12)
- Movies/Music Streaming (☞ P.15-13)
- Register S! Quick News (☞ P.8-5)

PC Site Browser/Direct Browser

- View PC Sites (☞ P.15-5)
- Download still images (☞ P.15-12)

- Separate subscription is required for Network access.
- For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Connecting Via Wi-Fi

Once connection setup is complete, handset automatically connects to that Wi-Fi network when within range.

- Wi-Fi: ☞ P.11-11
- Switch to 3G from Wi-Fi: ☞ P.15-14

Note

- Video Calls cannot be received while connecting to the Network.

Cache Memory

Retrieved information is temporarily saved in Cache Memory.

When full, oldest is deleted first.

- Previously viewed pages may load from Cache Memory. To view the latest, update information (☞ P.15-14).
- Cached items with expiry dates are deleted upon expiry.
- Information remains even after handset is disconnected from the Network or handset power is turned off.

Tip

Settings

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies (☞ P.18-23)
- Initialize Browser (☞ P.18-24)

SSL/TLS

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) and TLS (Transport Layer Security) are encryption protocols for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information such as credit card numbers.

Server certificates are saved on handset (☞ P.18-24).

Notes

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co.,Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Inc. and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL and TLS.

Tip

Settings

- Security Settings (☞ P.18-24)

Using Yahoo! Keitai

Opening Yahoo! Keitai Menu

Select Yahoo! Keitai Menu items to access websites.

Main Menu ► Yahoo!

1 Open Top Menu
Yahoo! Keitai

Open Menu List
Menu List

2 Select a menu item

- Repeat Step 2 as required.
- Basic Operations: P.15-7

Note

- Shortcut: In Standby,
- Alternatively, press or in Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser/Direct Browser top menu to switch browser menus.

Web Search

Enter text directly to search.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► Web Search

1 Enter text → [OK]

Entering URL

Enter URLs (addresses beginning with "http://" or "https://") directly to access websites, or open previously viewed pages using URL histories.

- Up to 20 URL histories are stored.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► Enter URL

1 Enter URL Directly
Direct Entry → Enter URL

Use URL History

URL History List →

Select a URL



URL History List Window

Delete URL Histories

> In Step 1, *URL History List* → (Highlight a URL →) [Menu] → *Delete* or *Delete All* → YES

Using Access Histories

Open previously viewed pages using access histories.

- Up to 100 access histories are stored. (The number of savable histories varies depending on data amount.)

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! ▶ History

1 Select a history



History Window

Delete Access Histories

> In Step 1, (highlight a history →) [Menu] → *Delete* or *Delete All* → *YES* (→ For *Delete All*, enter Phone Password)

Show Access History URLs

> In Step 1, highlight a history → [Menu] → *Display URL*

Exiting Mobile Internet

1 → *YES*

Note

- Closing handset does not affect active browser.

Browsing PC Sites

View PC websites using PC Site Browser or Direct Browser.

- When PC Site Browser is active, appears.
- Some pages may not be viewable.
- Viewing PC websites via PC Site Browser may incur high charges.

Opening Menu

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! ▶ PC Site Browser or Direct Browser

1 *Homepage*

For PC Site Browser, confirmation appears. Select *NO*.

- To show confirmation each time: *YES*

2 Select a menu item

Repeat Step 2 as required.

Note

- Alternatively, press or in Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser/Direct Browser top menu to switch to browser menu.

Tip

Settings

- Show/Hide Warning Messages when Activating PC Site Browser or Switching to Yahoo! Keitai (P.18-23)

Web Search

Enter text directly to search.

Main Menu ▶ **Yahoo!** ▶ **PC Site Browser** or **Direct Browser**
▶ **Web Search**

1 Enter text

Entering URL

Follow same operation accessed from Yahoo! Keitai.

Main Menu ▶ **Yahoo!** ▶ **PC Site Browser** or **Direct Browser**
▶ **Enter URL**

- Follow Step 1 of same operation accessed from Yahoo! Keitai (☞ P.15-4).

Using Access Histories

Follow same operation accessed from Yahoo! Keitai.

Main Menu ▶ **Yahoo!** ▶ **PC Site Browser** or **Direct Browser**
▶ **History**

- Follow Step 1 of same operation accessed from Yahoo! Keitai (☞ P.15-5).

Exiting Internet

1  → **YES**












Note

- Closing handset does not affect active browser.

Basic Operations

Using Cursor

- Operation descriptions are based on Portrait View.

Move Cursor	Use cursor to select underlined menu items.  to move right  to move left  to move to previous line  to move to next line
Scroll Pages	Scroll bar appears on right side or at bottom of Display when page content continues beyond view.  scroll up/down  scroll left/right  scroll page up by a screenful  scroll page down by a screenful ● To scroll continuously, press and hold above keys.
Move to previous page/ next page	Previously viewed pages are temporarily saved in Cache Memory ( P.15-3).  [Back] : Return to previous page  [Menu] → Forward : View next page ● Some web pages may not appear after performing the steps above.

When Authentication is Required

Some pages require user authentication for access.

If required, enter user ID or password.

Tip

Settings

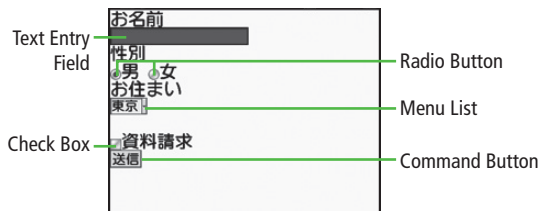


- Font Size ● Scroll Unit ● Images On/Off ● Sound On/Off
- Delete User ID or Password Entered when Authentication is Required ( P.18-23)

Text Entry & Item Selection

Enter text or select items to send information.

Example:



- Actual web pages may differ in appearance.

Text Entry Field	Highlight field → <input type="text"/> → Enter text → <input type="text"/>
Menu List	Highlight field → <input type="text"/> Menu list appears. Highlight an item → <input type="text"/> Selected items are highlighted.
Radio Button	Highlight <input type="radio"/> → <input checked="" type="radio"/> When selected, <input checked="" type="radio"/> appears.
Check Box	Highlight <input type="checkbox"/> → <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> When selected, <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> appears. Press <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> again to cancel selection.
Command Button	Highlight the button → <input type="button"/> Corresponding command is executed.

Using Information

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmark websites or save page content to Saved Pages.

- Some copy protected materials cannot be saved.

Bookmarks	Save links to websites. Handset connects to the Network to open the link.
Saved Pages	Save page content. Handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Network.

Saving Web Pages

1 Open a web page → [Menu] → **Bookmarks** or **Saved Pages** → **Add**

2 Select title → Edit title

3 **OK** → **OK**

Save URLs to Bookmarks

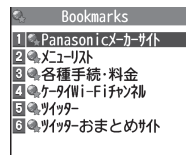
- > **Main Menu** ▶ **Yahoo!** (▶ **PC Site Browser** or **Direct Browser**)
 - ▶ **Bookmarks** ▶ [Menu] ▶ **Create New** ▶ **Bookmarks**
 - ▶ Enter a title or URL ▶ **OK**

Viewing Bookmarks & Saved Pages

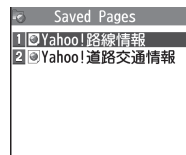
Main Menu ▶ **Yahoo!** (▶ **PC Site Browser** or **Direct Browser**)

1 **Bookmarks** or **Saved Pages** → Select an item

Example: Yahoo! Keitai



Bookmarks List Window



Saved Pages List Window

Open Bookmarks/Saved Pages in Web Page

> Open a web page → [Menu] → **Bookmarks** or **Saved Pages** → **View List**

Note

- Create folders in Bookmarks/Saved Pages List to organize Bookmarks/Saved Pages (☞ P.15-10).

Tip

- Send Bookmarks via Infrared (☞ P.11-3)
- Send Bookmarks via IC Transmission (☞ P.11-5)

Managing Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Follow the steps below to open Bookmarks or Saved Pages list:



Main Menu ► **Yahoo!** (► **PC Site Browser** or **Direct Browser**) ► **Bookmarks** or **Saved Pages**

Note



- When a different USIM Card is inserted, Saved Pages do not appear or title name cannot be changed.

Creating New Bookmarks/Saved Pages Folders



- Folders cannot be created within existing folders.

- Bookmarks**
 [Menu] → *Create New* → *Folders*
- Saved Pages**
 [Menu] → *New Folder*
- Enter title → *OK*


Moving Bookmarks/Saved Pages to Folder








- Highlight a bookmark/saved page →  [Menu] → *Move to* → *Move*
- Select a folder → *OK*
 - To return to Bookmarks/Saved Pages list: *Back* or 
- Move Bookmarks/Saved Pages back to List**
 > After Step 1 above, *Root folder* → *OK*

Rearranging Bookmarks/Saved Pages

- Available only when Display Order ( P. 15-11) is set to *Saved/Used Order*.
- In Bookmarks/Saved Pages list window,  [Menu] → *Move to* → *Sort*
 - Select new order → *OK*

Bookmarks/Saved Pages Functions

In Bookmarks/Saved Pages list window, press  [Menu] for following operations.

Item	Operation/Description
Go to Page	Open link; view saved web pages
Add shortcut icon ^{1 3}	Paste bookmarks to Standby > YES
Create New ¹	Create new Bookmarks folders ( P.15-10); save URLs to bookmarks ( P.15-9)
New Folder ²	Create new Saved Pages folders ( P.15-10)
Edit	Edit folder titles or bookmark URLs
Move to	( P.15-10)
Delete	> YES
Delete selected	> Check bookmarks/saved pages/folders →  [Finish] → YES
Delete All	YES → Enter Phone Password
Display URL	View URLs
Display Order	Rearrange bookmarks/saved pages/folders > Select a condition
Send URL ^{1 3}	Quote bookmark URLs in messages > Message or SMS → Create message (S! Mail:  From Step 2 on P.14-4/SMS:  From Step 2 on P.14-8)

Send to ExtnlDvcs^{1 3} Send bookmarks via Infrared/IC transmission ( P.11-3, P.11-5)

¹ Bookmarks only

² Saves Pages only

³ Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser only

Downloading Image/Sound Files

Save images, sounds, etc. to Data Folder or microSD Card.

- For PC Site Browser, only still images can be saved.
- For Direct Browser, image/sound files cannot be saved.


1 Open a web page →  [Menu] → **Select File**

2 Select a file

File details appear.

3 **Save** → **YES**

Available menu items vary by saved content.

- Save location is determined by Save Settings ( P.18-23).
However, save location may change depending on situations. Check confirmation when download is complete.

Note

- Do not remove/install microSD Card while saving files to it.
- Do not turn handset power off while downloading or saving files.
Files may be damaged.
- Some copy protected files may not be saved.
- Videos selected from web pages play while being downloaded.

Using Number, Address or URL


Use linked numbers, addresses or URLs to make calls, send messages, access websites, or save directly to Phone Book.

- For Direct Browser, phone numbers/mail addresses cannot be used.

1 Open a web page containing phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs




2 **Phone Number**

Select a phone number → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Voice call	Make a Voice Call
Video call	Make a Video Call
Select image	Select outgoing image
Add to Phone Book	Save a number to Phone Book ( From Step 2 on P.4-5)

E-mail Address

Select an address → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Compose message	Create messages ( From Step 4 on P.14-5)
Compose SMS	Create SMS ( From Step 4 on P.14-8)
Add to Phone Book	Save mail address to Phone Book ( From Step 2 on P.4-5)

URL

Select URL

Handset connects to the Network.



Streaming

- Streaming is available from compatible Yahoo! Keitai sites only.
- Streamed media are not savable.










Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! ▶ Yahoo! Keitai

1 Open a web page → Select a file

Streaming starts.

2  or  to exit

Engaged Streaming Operations

Mute/Release Mute	 [ / ]
Pause/Resume*	 [ / ]
Volume	
Set Playback Position*	 to start playback from specified point
Toggle Views	 <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Toggle: Portrait View → Landscape View (Fit to Display size) → Full-size Landscape View

* Unavailable during live streaming

Note

- Streaming requires a continuous Network connection. Network remains connected even during a pause (Transmission fees apply).
- Paused streams may stop after one minute of inactivity.
- Pausing playback while streaming via Wi-Fi (handset closed) may end streaming after 10 seconds.
- Using Bluetooth® device for wireless audio output may deactivate Wi-Fi function.
- When roaming abroad, streaming may be unavailable or not be performed properly.

Incoming Voice Calls while Streaming



Incoming call pauses an active stream.

- Video Calls cannot be received while streaming.

Option Menu Items

In Yahoo! Keitai, press  [Menu] for these options:

- Some functions may be unavailable depending on web pages.

Item	Operation/Description
Forward	Go to next page ( P.15-7)
Bookmarks	View Bookmarks list, add bookmarks, or paste bookmarks to Standby ¹
Saved Pages	View Saved Pages list or save page content to Saved Pages
Text Copy	Copy page text
Reload Page	Refresh page information
Enter URL	Enter URL directly or use URL History to access pages
Select File ¹	View, play or save file to Data Folder (Downloading Image/Sound Files:  From Step 2 on P.15-12)
Handy Functions	<p>Switch PC Browser²/Switch Browser³: Toggle Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser</p> <p>CHG wide scr. mode/RLS wide scr. mode: Toggle wide screen mode on/off according to handset</p> <p>Connect to Wi-Fi/Connect to 3G¹: Toggle Wi-Fi/3G connection</p> <p>Web Search: Search text in Internet</p> <p>Look up in dict.¹: Look up specified text in dictionary</p> <p>Search In Page: Search text within page</p> <p>Jump in this page: Jump to top/end of page</p> <p>Send URL¹: Send URL via mail</p> <p>History: Open previously viewed pages</p> <p>Expand/Shrink⁴: Zoom page in/out</p> <p>Set Display Range⁴: Specify displayed area of page</p> <p>Flash(R) Menu: Playback/pause Flash® files</p> <p>Properties: View page details or server certificates for secure pages</p>

Item	Operation/Description
Yahoo! Keitai²/ Home Page ⁴	View top menu
Settings	<p>Font Size: Change font size</p> <p>Encoding: Change encoding type</p> <p>Pointer: Set Pointer⁴</p>
Switch screen ⁴	Toggle between Small Screen and PC Screen
Exit Browser	Exit Browser

¹ Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser only

² Yahoo! Keitai only

³ PC Site Browser only

⁴ PC Site Browser/Direct Browser only

S! Appli

Before Using S! Appli	16-2
Downloading S! Appli.....	16-2
Using S! Appli	16-3
Activating S! Appli.....	16-3
Terminate/Suspend & Resume.....	16-3
Using S! Appli Startup History.....	16-3
Managing Applications.....	16-4

Before Using S! Appli

S! Appli are Java™-based applications designed to run on SoftBank handsets. Download games and other real-time applications for use on handset.

- Separate subscription required to use downloaded applications (not required for pre-installed S! Appli).
- For usage on pre-installed applications, see Help menu for each S! Appli.

Note

- For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Network S! Appli

Network S! Appli requires Network connection.

- Transmission fees apply.

License Information

> **Main Menu** ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Information**

Downloading S! Appli

Download up to 100 S! Appli files to handset/microSD Card.

- End suspended S! Appli if any. However, S! Appli may not be ended during calls.

Main Menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **S! Appli List**

1 **Download S! Appli** → **YES**

Handset connects to the Network, and download site appears.

2 Select an S! Appli

Properties appear.

3 Follow onscreen instructions

4 Select a save location

Downloaded S! Appli is saved to Data Folder automatically.

- Download may take some time.

5 **YES** to activate

Downloaded S! Appli starts.

- To exit: **NO**

■ **Download Lifestyle-Appli**

> **Main Menu** ▶ **Tools** or **S! Appli** ▶ **Osaifu-Keitai**

▶ **Lifestyle-Appli** ▶ **Download** ▶ **YES** ▶ Select a Lifestyle-Appli

- Lifestyle-Appli:  P.13-10

Note

- Alternatively, download S! Appli from **Main Menu** ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Download S! Appli** ▶ **YES**
- Alternatively, download Lifestyle-Appli from **Main Menu** ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **Lifestyle-Appli** ▶ **Download** ▶ **YES**


Using S! Appli

Activating S! Appli


Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli List

1 Select an S! Appli


Application starts and  appears.

- See application Help menu for usage information.
- Confirmation appears when selecting Network S! Appli.
- For a microSD Card S! Appli, press  [microSD] before Step 1.

Note



- Alternatively, **Main Menu ► Data Folder ► S! Appli**
► Select an S! Appli
- Closing handset/incoming transmissions pause S! Appli.
- AV output compatible applications may be viewed on a TV set ( P.11-18).

Tip

- Settings** ● Volume ● Backlight On/Off ● Vibration ● Update S! Appli
Information on microSD Card from Another Handset ( P.18-25)

Terminate/Suspend & Resume

Terminating/Pausing S! Appli

- 1 While running an S! Appli, 
- 2 **Suspended** or **Stopped**
 appears for a suspended application.

Resuming/Terminating Paused S! Appli

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli List

- 1 **Replayed** or **Stopped**
Resumed application starts from paused point.

Using S! Appli Startup History

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli History

- 1 Highlight a record →  [Menu] →
Start, S! Appli info or **Delete**

Managing Applications

Moving S! Appli between Handset and microSD Card

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli List

- 1 Highlight an S! Appli →  [Menu] → **Move to microSD** or **Move to phone**
 - Some S! Appli may not be moved to microSD Card.

Deleting S! Appli

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli List

- 1 Highlight an S! Appli →  [Menu] → **Delete** → **YES**
 - Some pre-installed S! Appli may not be deleted.

Viewing S! Appli Properties


Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli List

- 1 Highlight an S! Appli →  [Menu] → **S! Appli info**

Setting Security Level while Running S! Appli

- Security Level cannot be set for some applications.

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli List

- 1 Highlight an S! Appli →  [Menu] → **Security level**
- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Network Access	Connect to the Network
Auto Invocation	Activate S! Appli
Multimedia Recording	Activate Camera
Data Reading Access	Read data in Data Folder
Data Rewrtng Accss	Write/delete data in Data Folder
Location Access	Retrieve Location information

- 3 **Always Allowed, Ask First Time***, **Ask Every Time** or **Not Allowed**

* Confirmation appears the first time application is activated.

Reset Security Level Settings

Reset security level settings to default or condition when downloading.

> In Step 2, **Reset Sec. Setting** → **YES**

S! GPS Navi

About S! GPS Navi.....	17-2
Using S! GPS Navi.....	17-2
Checking Your Current Position.....	17-2
Activating Navi Appli.....	17-3
Using Location Navi (Japanese).....	17-3
Using Location Log.....	17-3

About S! GPS Navi

S! GPS Navi provides location information by communicating with base stations and by GPS satellite. Check your position on map, area information or route to your destination using a Navi Appli.

Note

- Location information may be inaccurate due to location or signal conditions.
- SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Position cannot be determined while Positioning Lock is active (☞ P.18-26).
- For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Using S! GPS Navi

Checking Your Current Position

Activate Navi Appli to check your position.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ S! GPS Navi

1 **Current Location** → YES

Positioning starts.

- To check your current position during positioning: When [Use] appears at lower right, (☑) → OK

2 When positioning is complete, (○)[Map] → YES

Handset connects to the Network and web page opens.

- To reposition: (☑)[Retry]

■ Save to Phone Book

Save obtained location information to Phone Book.

- > Positioning is complete → (☑)[Menu] → **Add to Phone Book** → YES → Follow the steps for saving to Phone Book (☞ From Step 2 on P.4-5)

■ Indicating Positioning Accuracy Level

Accuracy Level 📶📶📶 ... Fairly accurate

Accuracy Level 📶📶📶 ... Relatively accurate

Accuracy Level 📶📶📶 ... No accurate location information retrieved
Retrieve location information again

Activating Navi Appli

Search for current area information or route to your destination.

- End all applications including suspended applications.

Main Menu ► Tools ► S! GPS Navi ► Navi Appli

Using Location Navi (Japanese)

Use Location Navi to locate a person via a SoftBank 3G handset or PC.

For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Main Menu ► Tools ► S! GPS Navi ► Location Navi

Note

- Information window appears when location information is automatically provided or location information request is rejected. Select Information to show location log.


Using Location Log

Up to 50 latest location info are saved. Delete as required.

Main Menu ► Tools ► S! GPS Navi ► Location Logs

1 Show Details


Select a record to view details

-  appears if positioning fails.

Delete a Record

Highlight a record →  [Menu] → *Delete* → *Delete this* → *YES*

Delete All

 [Menu] → *Delete* → *Delete all* → Enter Phone Password → *YES*

Note

- When 50 records are saved, oldest is deleted first.
- When positioning is requested while viewing a record, a message appears and log window returns.

Tip

Settings ● S! GPS Navi Settings (📖 P.18-26)

Settings


Sound & Vibration	18-2
Ringtones.....	18-2
Charge Sound/Key Tone.....	18-3
Display	18-3
Display Settings.....	18-3
Main Menu.....	18-4
Clock.....	18-5
Backlight.....	18-5
Font.....	18-6
Motion Control.....	18-6
Viewer Position.....	18-7
Manner Mode	18-7
Incoming Settings	18-8
Date & Time	18-9
Call Settings	18-9
Call Time & Call Cost.....	18-9
Making & Receiving Calls.....	18-9
Notification Light	18-10
Text Entry	18-11
Text Entry Method.....	18-11
Conversion.....	18-11
Conversion Settings for Messaging.....	18-11
Phone Book	18-12
Voice Dial	18-12
Video Call	18-12
Function Menus.....	18-12
Engaged Video Call Settings.....	18-13

Digital TV	18-13
Camera	18-15
Camera Settings.....	18-15
Video Camera Settings.....	18-17
Mobile Widget (Japanese)	18-18
S! Quick News (Japanese)	18-18
Bluetooth®	18-19
Messaging	18-20
Universal Settings.....	18-20
S! Mail Settings.....	18-21
PC Mail Settings.....	18-22
SMS Settings.....	18-22
Internet	18-23
Browser Display Settings/Memory Manager.....	18-23
Security Settings.....	18-24
Reset.....	18-24
S! Appli	18-25
Osaifu-Keitai®	18-25
S! GPS Navi Settings	18-26
Default Settings	18-27
Confirming Settings	18-28

Settings Sound & Vibration

Ringtones

From  Main Menu  Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
Ringtone > <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Ring Tones</i> → Select an item → <i>Select Ring Tone</i> → Select a type → Select a folder → Select a tone	Phone/Video Call: Pattern 1 Message: Tone3
Machi-Uta® (Change Ringback Tone)¹ > <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Machi-Uta</i> → Select an item	—
Ringer Volume > <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Ringer Volume</i> → Select a type →  to adjust volume	Level 4
3D Sound Effect (Ringtone/Melody) > <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Stereo/3D Sound</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON
Ringtone Sound Output to Earphone² > <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Earphone</i> → <i>Earphone</i>	Earphone + Speaker
New Message Ringtone Duration > <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Message Ring Tones</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> (→ For <i>ON</i> , enter ring time)	ON (Ring time: 05 sec)
Vibration > <i>Incoming Settings</i> → <i>Vibrator</i> → Select an item → Select a vibration pattern	OFF

¹ For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

² When earphone is connected and Sound Settings is set to **Earphone**, ringtone sounds through earphone and speaker for incoming calls/messages or alarms after about 20 seconds. Other sounds (e.g. Demo playback) are heard only from earphone.

Pre-installed Ringtones

Title	Composer
Pinwheel	Original
SINFONIA NR 101 THE CLOCK HOB I 101	HAYDN FRANZ JOSEPH
JE TE VEUX	SATIE ERIK ALFREDI LE
DANSE DES MIRLITONS // CASSE NOISETTE OP 71A /ORI	CHAJKOVSKIJ PETR ILICH
HEIGH HO // SNOW WHITE AND THE SEVEN DWARFS /INST	CHURCHILL FRANK E
DANCE OF THE KNIGHTS OP 64 NO 13	PROKOFEV SERGEJ S
WALTZ/COPPELIA BALLET SUITE	DELIBES LEO CLEMENT PHILIBERT
PETER AND THE WOLF OP 67	PROKOFEV SERGEJ S

Names of composers given above conform to JASRAC Website. Parts of titles may not appear due to Display size.

Charge Sound/Key Tone

From **Main Menu** ► **Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Key Tone > <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Key Tone</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	OFF
■ Start/End Charging Tone > <i>Phone Settings</i> → <i>Battery</i> → <i>Charge Sound</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON

Settings **Display**

Display Settings

- Viewer Position Menu/Main Menu Background (☞ P.18-7)

From **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Display Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Wallpaper > <i>Internal Display</i> → <i>Stand-by Display</i> → Select an item (→ Select a folder) → Select an image	(☞ P.18-27)
■ Add Calendar to Wallpaper > <i>Internal Display</i> → <i>Stand-by Display</i> → <i>Calendar</i> → Select a view format → <i>BG Image ON</i> or <i>BG Image OFF</i> (→ For <i>BG Image ON</i> , select a folder → select an image)	—
■ Change Wallpaper Randomly > <i>Internal Display</i> → <i>Stand-by Display</i> → <i>Random Display</i> → Select a folder → <i>Every Hour</i> or <i>Every Day</i>	—
■ Outgoing Call/Message Image > <i>Internal Display</i> → Select an outgoing type → Select a folder → Select an image	(☞ P.18-27)
■ Incoming Call/Message Image > <i>Internal Display</i> → Select an incoming type → <i>Select Calling Disp.</i> ¹ → Select an image type → Select a folder → Select an image	(☞ P.18-27)

<p>■ Battery/Antenna Indicator > <i>Internal Display</i> → <i>Battery Icon</i> or <i>Antenna Icon</i> → Select a pattern</p>	Pattern 1
<p>■ Start-up Window > <i>Internal Display</i> → <i>Start-up</i> → Select an item²</p>	—
<p>■ Display Color Scheme > <i>Color</i> → Select a color</p>	(☞ P.18-27)
<p>■ Interface Language > <i>言語設定</i> → <i>日本語</i> or <i>English</i></p>	日本語
<p>■ Show/Hide New Call/Message when Handset Opens > <i>Open for New</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i></p>	OFF

¹ ● Setting applies to messages retrieved manually or when Server Mail is retrieved (Retrieve New window cannot be changed).

² ● For *Pictures* or *Videos*: Select a folder → Select an image
 ● For *Message*: Enter text

Main Menu

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Display Settings**
 ► **Menu Icons**

Setting/Operation	Default
<p>■ Main Menu Theme > Select a pattern</p>	(☞ P.18-27)
<p>■ Main Menu Icons > <i>Customize</i> → Select a menu → Select a folder → Select an image</p>	—
<p>■ Main Menu Background > <i>Customize</i> → <i>Background Image</i> → Select a folder → Select an image</p>	—

Clock

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► Display Settings
 ► Internal Display ► Clock

Setting/Operation	Default
Standby Clock Pattern¹ > <i>Stand-by Clock</i> → [Pattern] → Select a pattern → [Set]	Pattern 4
Standby Clock Position^{1 2} > <i>Stand-by Clock</i> → [Position] → Select a position → [Set]	Pattern 1
Standby Clock Size¹ > <i>Stand-by Clock</i> → [Size] → <i>Small</i> → [Set]	Large
Icon Clock at Upper Right (lower right in Landscape View) > <i>Icon Clock</i> → Select a pattern	Pattern 4

¹ Highlight *Stand-by Clock* → [Play] to view Standby Clock.

- ² ● Clock appears in **Pattern 1** when:
- Calendar, World Clock or Operator Name is set to appear in Standby
 - Time zone is set to other than GMT+9
 - Privacy Key Lock is active
- Standby Clock position can be changed manually (☞ P.1-22).

Backlight

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► Display Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
Turn Backlight On/Off; Set Power Saver Mode¹ > <i>Back Light Time</i> → <i>Lighting</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> → Enter time to Power Saver mode	ON + 15secs.
Illuminate Backlight while Charging > <i>Back Light Time</i> → <i>Charging</i> → <i>Long Time Light</i> or <i>Standard</i>	Standard ²
Set Backlight for Display Only or Display and Keypad > <i>Back Light Time</i> → <i>Area</i> → <i>LCD</i> or <i>LCD + Keys</i>	LCD + Keys
Brightness > <i>Back Light Time</i> → <i>Brightness</i> → Select a brightness level	Auto ³
Soft Light > <i>Back Light Time</i> → <i>Soft Light</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON
Auto Image Compensation > <i>LCD AI</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON

¹ During operation (except when in Standby or S! Appli is active), press and hold [5] to toggle **ON/OFF**.

² When set to **Standard**, backlight illuminates with the same setting as **Lighting** setting.

³ When set to **Auto**, backlight for Display/Keypad is automatically adjusted according to ambient light.

Font

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► Display Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Change Font Size by Function > <i>Font Size</i> → Select an item → Select a size 	Standard
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Change Menu Font Size > <i>Font Size</i> → <i>Collective Setting</i> → Select a size* 	Standard
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Change Font (Incoming/Outgoing Call Window) > <i>Disp. Call/Recv #</i> → <i>Pattern 1</i> or <i>Pattern 2</i> 	Pattern 1

* When **Small** is set, font size for Phone Book and Incoming/Outgoing Call Logs is **Standard**.

Motion Control

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings
► Motion Control Setting

Setting/Operation	Default
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Motion Control > <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> 	ON (Except Y! Keitai)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Customize Motion Control > Highlight <i>Customize</i> → [Edit] → Select an item → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> → [Finish] 	ON (Except Y! Keitai)

Viewer Position

From ► Main Menu ► Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
<p>■ Set Function to Activate Upon Switching to Viewer Position (from Standby)</p> <p>> <i>Phone Settings</i> → <i>Work with Style</i> → Select an item</p>	OFF
<p>■ Main Menu Background</p> <p>> <i>Display Settings</i> → <i>Internal Display</i> → <i>Stand-by Disp. Viewer</i> → <i>Pictures</i> → Select a folder → Select an image</p>	(👉 P.18-27)

Settings Manner Mode

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► Incoming Settings ► Manner Mode Type

Setting/Operation	Default
<p>■ Set Manner Mode Type</p> <p>> Select a mode (→ For <i>User Mode</i>, set individual items → [Finish])</p>	Manner Mode

Default Settings by Mode

Manner Mode	Super Silent	Driving Mode	User Mode
Answer Phone			
Value set for Answer Phone	Value set for Answer Phone	ON	OFF
Vibrator			
ON	ON	OFF	ON
Volume (In. Calls/Msg Ring T./Alarm)			
Silent	Silent	Silent	Silent
Rec. Check Tone			
ON	OFF	ON	ON
Key Tone			
OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Mic Sensitiv.			
Up	Up	Up	Up
LVA Tone (Low battery alarm)			
OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF

Settings Incoming Settings

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► Incoming Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
Change Answer Setting (☞ Right) > <i>Answer Setting</i> → Select an item	Any Key Answer
Answer Calls by Opening Handset > <i>Open-to-Ans. Call</i> → <i>Phone</i> or <i>Video Call</i> → <i>Answer</i>	Keep Ringing
Show/Hide Caller Image Saved in Phone Book > <i>Phone Book Image</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON
Set Tone for Missed Call/New Message Notification Set to ☐ (☞/☞) (☞ Right) > <i>Info Notice Setting</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON
Auto Answer with Earphone > <i>Auto Answer</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> (→ For <i>ON</i> , enter ring time)	OFF
Call Waiting Response > <i>In-call Management</i> → Select an item	Answer

Answer Setting Key Operations

Any Key Answer	To answer a call, press any of the following keys: Voice Call: , , - , , , , , , , , (☞/☞) Video Call: ,
Quick Silent	To cancel ringtone/vibration, press any of the following keys: Voice Call/Video Call: - , , , , , , , , (☞/☞)
OFF	To answer a call, press any of the following keys: Voice Call/Video Call: ,

- When [Voice Mail] is assigned to indicated at the bottom of Display, press to start voice or video recording.

Info Notice Setting Response


ON	No Missed Calls/No Received Messages: Triple-beep sounds Missed Calls/Received Messages: Double-beep sounds twice
ボイス (Voice)*	No Missed Calls/No Received Messages: Triple-beep sounds Missed Calls: Double-beep sounds; voice message announces that you have a missed call Received Messages: Double-beep sounds; voice message announces that you have a new message

- When Vibrator is set for Incoming Settings, vibration activates with beeps. In Manner Mode, only vibration activates.
- Set Side-keys Guard (☞ P.12-9) to **OFF** beforehand.

* Japanese only

Settings Date & Time

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► Date & Time

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Set Date and Time* > <i>Date & Time</i> → Enter year, date, time and time zone	—
■ World Clock > <i>World Clock</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> (→ For <i>ON</i> ,  to select an area)	OFF
■ Daylight Savings Time > <i>Daylight Savings</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	OFF
■ Set Alarm Action while Other Functions are Active > <i>Alarm Tone</i> → <i>Operation Preferred</i> or <i>Alarm Preferred</i>	Alarm Preferred
■ Auto-Time Correction via Yahoo! Keitai > <i>Time Correction</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON

* Date & Time Settings effective on handset: from 09:00 on 2000/01/01 to 23:59 on 2037/12/31 (when time zone is set to GMT+9).

Settings Call Settings

Call Time & Call Cost

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings


Setting/Operation	Default
■ View Call Time/Cost¹ > <i>Call Time/Cost</i>	—
■ Reset Total Call Charge/Time > <i>Reset</i> → Enter Phone Password → <i>Reset Total Duration</i> or <i>Reset Total Cost</i> → <i>YES</i> (→ For <i>Reset Total Cost</i> , enter PIN2)	—
■ Set Charge Limit² > <i>Set Max Cost Limit</i> → <i>ON</i> → Enter charge limit → Enter PIN2	OFF

¹ May not be available depending on subscription status. In that case, Set Max Cost Limit is not available.

² When set to *ON*, incoming/outgoing calls including emergency number calls are not dialable if charge limit is reached.

Making & Receiving Calls

From ► Main Menu ► Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Change Earpiece Volume > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Volume</i> →  to adjust volume	Level 4

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Set Handset Response when Closed during Call > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Closing Clamshell</i> → Select an item* 	End the Call
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Hold Tone > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Hold Tones</i> → <i>On-hold Tone</i> or <i>Holding Tone</i> → Select a tone 	On-hold Tone: On-hold Tone 1 Holding Tone: JESU JOY OF MAN'S
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Noise Reduction > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Noise Reduction</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> 	ON
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Alarm Signal (Tone Sounds before Call is Disconnected) > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Quality Alarm</i> → Select an item 	High Tone
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Reconnect Signal (Tone Sounds until Line is Reconnected) > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Reconnect Signal</i> → Select an item 	High Tone
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Call Service Numbers (Service currently unavailable) > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Service Numbers</i> → Select a service number → 	—
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Specify Phone Book Entry to Call with Earphone > <i>Phone Settings</i> → <i>Headset Switch to Call</i> → <i>Voice Call</i> → Search Phone Book → Select an item 	OFF

* When **Hold Call** is selected: **Speaker ON** (Hold tone sounds from speaker)/**Speaker OFF** (Hold tone does not sound from speaker)

Settings Notification Light

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Notification Light**

Setting/Operation	Default
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Set by Incoming Type (Voice/Video Calls or Messages) > <i>Incoming</i> → <i>Select Color</i> → Select a type → Select a color 	(☞ P.18-27)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Change Color Name for Incoming Call/Message > <i>Incoming</i> → <i>Color</i> → <i>Edit Color Name</i> → Select a color → Edit color name 	—
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Adjust Color Tone for Incoming Call/Message > <i>Incoming</i> → <i>Color</i> → <i>Adjust Color Tone</i> → Select a color → Adjust color tone 	—
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Set for Missed Calls/New Messages > <i>Missed Call/Unread</i> → Select an item or <i>OFF</i> 	OFF after 24hours
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Custom Set Notification Light > Select a function → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>, or select a color 	—
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ View Status* > <i>Confirm Status</i> 	—

* View Notification Light settings for incoming calls/messages, engaged calls.

Settings Text Entry

Text Entry Method

From ► **Main Menu** ► Settings ► Phone Settings
► Text Entry Method

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Character Input Method > <i>CHG Input Method</i> → 5-touch or 2-touch	5-touch
■ Show/Hide Predictive Candidates and Context Forecast > <i>Predict</i> → ON or OFF	ON
■ Reset Learned Words > <i>Reset Learned Words</i> → Enter Phone Password → YES	—

Conversion

From ► Text entry window, [?][Menu] ► Text entry setting

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Show/Hide Predictive Candidates and Context Forecast > <i>Prediction OFF</i>	Prediction ON
■ Fix Entered Characters Automatically > <i>Character set time</i> → Select a speed	OFF

Conversion Settings for Messaging

From ► **Main Menu** ► Messaging ► Settings
► Universal Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Pre-text Predict > <i>Pre-text Predict</i> → ON or OFF	ON
■ Prediction for Message Reply > <i>Pred. Conv. at Reply</i> → ON or OFF	OFF

Settings Phone Book

From ► Main Menu ► Phone ► Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Save Location for New Entry > <i>Save Settings</i> → Select an item	Phone
■ Search Method > <i>Search Method</i> → Select a method	A-KA-SA-TA-NA/ Reading
■ Font Size > <i>Font Size</i> → <i>Phone Book</i> or <i>Call Log</i> → Select a size	Standard
■ Forwarding Phone Book Entry Images > <i>Forwarding Image</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON*

* If *ON* is selected, images can be forwarded via Infrared, IC transmission or Bluetooth®.

Settings Voice Dial

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings
► Voice Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Auto Voice Dial > <i>Auto Voice Dial</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	OFF
■ Set Voice Dial via Earphone or Bluetooth® Device > <i>Voice Earphone Dial</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	OFF

Settings Video Call

Function Menus

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► Video Call

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Incoming Image Quality > <i>Incoming Video Qlty</i> → Select an item	Standard
■ Outgoing Image > <i>Select Images</i> → Select a category → Highlight <i>Original</i> → [Menu] → <i>Change setting</i> → Select a folder → Select a file → [Play]	Pre-installed
■ Earpiece On/Off > <i>Loud Speaker</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON
■ Switch to Voice Call when Video Call Fails > <i>Voice Call Auto Redial</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	OFF
■ Toggle Outgoing/Incoming Image Setting > <i>Switch Images</i> → Select an item	Receiving Priority

Engaged Video Call Settings

From During a Video Call, [Menu] V. Call settings

Setting/Operation	Default
<p> Incoming Image Quality <i>IncomingVideo Qlty</i> → Select an item</p>	Standard
<p> Brightness <i>Brightness</i> → Select a brightness level</p>	0
<p> Adjust Outgoing Image Color Tone to Lighting Conditions <i>White balance</i> → Select an environment</p>	Automatic
<p> Outgoing Image Color Tone <i>Color mode set</i> → Select a color tone</p>	Normal
<p> Image Quality in Low Light Conditions <i>Night mode</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i></p>	OFF
<p> Set Focus <i>Focus</i> → Select a focus type</p>	Landscape

Settings Digital TV

From **Main Menu** **TV** **User Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
<p> Change Display Setting <i>Display/Operation</i> → <i>V. img/Caption Setting</i> → Select an item</p>	V. img+ Caption+ DBC
<p> Change Caption Position in Wide Screen <i>Display/Operation</i> → <i>Caption Posit. in W-scr</i> → <i>Upper</i> or <i>Lower</i></p>	Lower
<p> Show/Hide Indicators in Wide Screen <i>Display/Operation</i> → <i>Icons</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i></p>	ON
<p> Ticker Setting for Incoming Mail Notification <i>Display/Operation</i> → <i>Mail Ticker Display</i> → Select an item</p>	Receipt Notification
<p> End TV when Handset is Closed <i>Display/Operation</i> → <i>Work When Folded</i> → Select an item</p>	Maintain (Continue Viewing)
<p> Auto-adjust Frame Rate <i>Video</i> → <i>Mobile W-Speed</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i></p>	ON
<p> Image Quality <i>Video</i> → <i>Image Quality</i> → Select an item</p>	Dynamic
<p> Set Backlight Duration while Watching TV <i>Display Light</i> → <i>Lighting Duration</i> → Enter duration (min.)</p>	Constant Light
<p> Auto-adjust (Increase) Volume <i>Sound Effect</i> → <i>Auto Volume</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i></p>	ON

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Sound Remaster for Earphone or Bluetooth® Device > <i>Sound Effect</i> → <i>Remaster</i>¹ → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> 	OFF
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Listening Effect for Earphone or Bluetooth® Device > <i>Sound Effect</i> → <i>Listening</i>¹ → Select an item 	OFF
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Change Sound Quality for Earphone or Bluetooth® Device > <i>Sound Effect</i> → <i>Equalizer</i>¹ → Select an item 	Normal
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Record Program when Battery Runs Low > <i>Recording</i> → <i>Rec. When Low Battery</i> → <i>Continue Recording</i> or <i>Stop Recording</i> 	Continue Recording
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Auto-record TV when Interrupted by Call > <i>Recording</i> → <i>Rec. Program When Call</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> 	OFF
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Download Images from Data Broadcast Sites > <i>Data Broadcasting</i> → <i>Images</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> 	ON
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Set Sound On/Off for Data Broadcast Sites > <i>Data Broadcasting</i> → <i>Sound Effect</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> 	ON
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Show Confirmation for Data Broadcast > <i>Data Broadcasting</i> → <i>Reset Settings</i> → <i>YES</i> 	—
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Set Power Saving Mode² > <i>ECO Mode</i> → <i>YES</i> 	OFF
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Reset Channel List > <i>Reset Channel Setting</i> → Enter Phone Password → <i>YES</i> 	—

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Delete Information in Broadcasting Storage Area > <i>Reset Storage Area</i> → (Highlight an affiliated channel →) (☒) [Menu] → <i>Delete</i> → <i>Delete this</i> or <i>Delete all</i> (→ For <i>Delete all</i>, enter Phone Password) → <i>YES</i> 	—
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Reset TV Settings > <i>Reset TV Settings</i> → Enter Phone Password → <i>YES</i> 	—
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Check TV Settings > <i>Check TV Settings</i> 	—

¹ Remaster/Listening/Equalizer Settings: ☞ P.5-7

² To cancel ECO Mode, perform same operation. When ECO Mode is set, following settings automatically activate and cannot be changed. When canceled, original settings return.

Mobile W-Speed: OFF

Image Quality: Normal

Remaster: OFF

Listening: OFF

Equalizer: Normal

Settings Camera

- Change settings before capturing images. (☞ P.6-4).
- Some settings are not available depending on camera mode, image size or photo mode.

Camera Settings

- Most operation descriptions are based on Digicam mode in Normal Position. Actual screenshots and operations may differ from Viewer Position or Photo mode/Action mode.

Digicam Mode

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Camera** ► **Digicam Mode**
► [Menu]

Photo Mode

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Camera** ► **Photo Mode**
► [Menu]

Action Mode

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Camera** ► **Photo Mode**
► [Menu] ► **CHG camera-mode**
► **Action mode** ► [Menu]

Setting/Operation	Default
Photo Mode > Photo mode (☞ P.6-14)	Digicam mode/ Photo mode: iA (Intelligent Auto) Action mode: Normal
Change Image Size > Image size → Select a size	Digicam mode: 2M Wide Photo mode: Stand-by (480x854) Action mode: VGA(480x640)
Image Quality > (Camera settings →) ¹ Image QLTY → Select an item	Super fine
Change Continuous Shooting Setting² > Cont. set. (☞ P.6-12)	—
Photo Light > Photo light → ON or OFF	OFF
Focus Setting > (Camera settings →) ¹ Focus → Select an item	Camera mode: FaceDetect Action mode: Auto
Brightness > (Camera settings →) ¹ Brightness → Select a level	±0
Adjust Color Balance According to Lighting Conditions > (Camera settings →) ¹ White BAL → Select an item	Auto

<p>■ Color Mode > (Camera settings →)¹ Color mode → Select an item</p>	Normal
<p>■ Save Location > (Storage setting →)¹ Store in → Phone or microSD</p>	Phone
<p>■ Auto Shutter³ > AutoShutter (👉 P.6-13)</p>	OFF
<p>■ Touch AF/AE (in Viewer Position) > TouchAF/AE → Valid or Invalid</p>	Valid
<p>■ Set Auto Timer > Auto timer (👉 P.6-12)</p>	OFF
<p>■ ISO Sensitivity^{3 5} > ISO setting → Select an item</p>	1600 auto
<p>■ Viewfinder Display Pattern³ > Kisekae → Pattern 1 or Pattern 2</p>	Pattern 1
<p>■ View Image before Saving³ > Auto review → Select a time, OFF or Hold</p>	2 seconds
<p>■ Camera Mode > Camera-mode → Select a mode</p>	—
<p>■ Image Stabilizer⁴ > Camera settings → Img. stabilizer → Auto or OFF</p>	Auto
<p>■ Add Frames⁴ > Camera settings → Shoot with frame → ON → Select an frame → Capture an image</p>	OFF

<p>■ Shutter Click Sound¹ > Camera settings → Shutter sound → Select an item</p>	Sound 1
<p>■ Minimize Flicker while Shooting near Fluorescent Light¹ > Camera settings → Flicker correction → Select an item</p>	Automatically
<p>■ Auto-Save¹ > Storage setting → Auto save set → ON or OFF</p>	ON
<p>■ Viewfinder Size¹ > Display size → Actual size or Fit in display</p>	Actual size
<p>■ Display Indicators¹ > Icon → ON or OFF</p>	ON
<p>■ Memory Information¹ > Memory Status</p>	—

¹ Photo mode/Action mode only

² Digicam mode/Action mode only

³ Digicam mode only

⁴ Photo mode only

⁵ When ISO setting is set to **1600 auto** or higher, image size is reduced to less than 3M.

Video Camera Settings

From **Main Menu** ▶ **Camera** ▶ **Video Camera**
 ▶ **[Menu]**

Setting/Operation	Default
Camera Mode > <i>CHG camera-mode</i> → Select a mode	—
Photo Mode > <i>Photo mode</i> (📷 P.6-14)	Normal
Image Size > <i>Image size</i> → Select a size	QVGA (320x240)
Recording Time > <i>File size setting</i> → Select an item	Mail restrict'n (L)
Brightness > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Brightness</i> → Select a level	±0
Adjust Color Balance According to Lighting Conditions > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>White balance</i> → Select an item	Auto
Color Mode > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Color mode set</i> → Select an item	Normal
Focus Setting > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Focus</i> → Select an item	Face Detection
Image Quality > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Image quality</i> → Select an item	Super fine
Image Stabilizer > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Img. stabilizer</i> → <i>Auto</i> or <i>OFF</i>	Auto

Shutter Click Sound > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Shutter sound</i> → Select an item	Sound 1
Minimize Flicker while Shooting near Fluorescent Light > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Flicker correction</i> → Select an item	Automatically
Save Location* > <i>Storage setting</i> → <i>Store in</i> → <i>Phone</i> or <i>microSD</i>	Phone
Auto-Save* > <i>Storage setting</i> → <i>Auto save set</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON
Photo Light > <i>Photo light set.</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	OFF
Auto Timer > <i>Auto timer</i> (📷 P.6-12)	OFF
Audio Recording > <i>Movie type set</i> → <i>Normal</i> or <i>Video</i>	Normal
Viewfinder Size > <i>Display size</i> → <i>Actual size</i> or <i>Fit in display</i>	Actual size
Mail Attachment Mode > <i>Attach msg. mode</i> → <i>YES</i>	—
Display Indicators > <i>Icon</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON
Memory Information > <i>Memory Status</i>	—

* When File size setting is set to **Long time**, save location is set to microSD.

Settings Mobile Widget (Japanese)

From ► Main Menu ► Widget ► Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Auto Update > <i>Auto Refresh</i> → Select an item	8 hours
■ Auto Roaming > <i>Auto Roaming</i> → ON or OFF	OFF
■ Show/Hide Confirmation when Roaming Abroad > <i>Roaming Notification</i> → ON or OFF	ON
■ Cookies Sending/Receiving > <i>Cookies</i> → ON or OFF	ON
■ Delete Cookies > <i>Delete Cookies</i> → YES	—
■ Pointer Speed > <i>Pointer Speed</i> → Select a speed	Medium Speed

Settings S! Quick News (Japanese)

From ► Main Menu ► News/Entertainment
 ► S! Quick News ► Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Auto Update Quick News^{1 2} > <i>Auto Refresh</i> → S! Quick News → Select an item	1 hour
■ Auto Update General News (Once a day) > <i>Auto Refresh</i> → General → ON or OFF	ON ^{1 2}
■ Auto Update Special News (Every four hours)^{1 2} > <i>Auto Refresh</i> → Special → ON or OFF	OFF
■ Delete All S! Quick News Information > <i>Del S! Quick News List</i> → YES → Enter Phone Password	—
■ Show/Hide Only Unread Items in Standby > <i>S! Quick News Settings</i> → Unread/Read Setting → Unread or Unread + Read	Unread + Read
■ Marquee Speed > <i>S! Quick News Settings</i> → Display Speed → Select a speed	Normal
■ Image Download > <i>Image Display</i> → ON or OFF	OFF

¹ If calls are in progress at update time, auto update does not occur until next update.

² Video Calls are rejected during auto update.

Settings Bluetooth®

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Tools** ► **Bluetooth**
► **My Devices Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Authentication/Encryption Setting for Phone Book Transfer > <i>Set Authentications</i> → ON or OFF (→ For ON , ON or OFF)	OFF/OFF
■ Password Entry for Sending All Phone Book Entries > <i>Session Number Setting</i> → ON or OFF	OFF
■ Duration to Search for Bluetooth® Devices > <i>Time-out to Search</i> → Enter duration (sec.)	05 sec
■ Ringtone Output to Headset/Handsfree Device > <i>Forward Ring Tone</i> → ON or OFF	ON
■ End Calls when Bluetooth® Headset/Handsfree Device Disconnects > <i>Disconnection Settings</i> → End the Call or Continue on the Phone	End the Call
■ Dial from Handset (When Headset Device is Connected) > <i>Dial from Handset</i> → Activate or Deactivate	Activate
■ Always Use Handsfree Device to Make/Receive Calls > <i>Handsfree Setting</i> → Handsfree Mode	Private Mode ¹
■ Bluetooth® Properties > <i>Device Properties</i> ²	—

¹ In **Private Mode**, device that makes/answers call takes priority.

² Device name, address, class and supported services appear.

To change device name:  **[Edit]**

Settings Messaging

Universal Settings

From **Main Menu** ► **Messaging** ► **Settings**
 ► **Universal Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
Font Size¹ > <i>Message Display</i> → <i>Font Size</i> → Select a size	Normal
Scroll Unit in Text Entry/Preview Window > <i>Message Display</i> → <i>Scroll Unit</i> → Select an item	Single Line
Quote Original Message in Reply > <i>Quote Message</i> → Check items → [Finish]	SMS: OFF S! Mail/ PC Mail: ON
Attachment Size² > <i>Image Compression</i> → Select a size or <i>OFF</i>	500KB
Request Delivery Confirmation (Compatible only with SoftBank handset numbers) > <i>Delivery Report</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	OFF
Anti-Spam Measures > <i>Anti-Spam Measures</i> → <i>Report Spam</i> → [Edit] → Edit recipient address → [Finish] → <i>YES</i>	stop@meiwaku. softbankmobile. co.jp

Reset Anti-Spam Measures > <i>Anti-Spam Measures</i> → <i>Report Spam</i> → [Y] [Menu] → <i>Reset Address</i> → [Finish] → <i>YES</i>	—
Auto Delete (For Sent/Unsent) > <i>Auto Delete</i> → <i>Auto Sent Msg Del</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON
Auto Delete (For Incoming Mail) > <i>Auto Delete</i> → <i>Auto Received Msg Del</i> → Select an item	ON (All Msg)
Show/Hide Incoming Mail Notification during Handset Operations > <i>Receiving Settings</i> → <i>Receiving Display</i> → <i>Alarm Preferred</i> or <i>Operation Preferred</i>	Alarm Preferred
Incoming Mail Display > <i>Receiving Settings</i> → <i>Sender Display</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON
Outgoing Mail Notification > <i>Sending Display</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON
Auto Resend Unsent Messages > <i>Auto Resend</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON

¹ Character size in SMS or S! Mail subject field does not change. Check preview to see actual size.

² JPEG files only

S! Mail Settings

From **Main Menu** ► **Messaging** ► **Settings**
 ► **S! Mail Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Set Reply-to Address > <i>Sending Options</i> → <i>Set Reply-To</i> → <i>ON</i> → Select reply-to address entry field → Select a reply-to address or enter directly → [Finish]	OFF
■ Auto Signature > <i>Sending Options</i> → <i>Set Signature</i> → <i>ON</i> , <i>ON When New</i> or <i>OFF</i> (→ For <i>ON</i> or <i>ON When New</i> , select signature entry field → Enter signature → [Finish])	OFF
■ Maximum Outgoing Message Size > <i>Sending Options</i> → <i>Create Msg. Size</i> → <i>300KB</i> or <i>2MB</i>	2MB
■ Set Preference for Amount of Pictographs in AutoArt > <i>Sending Options</i> → <i>AutoArt Settings</i> → <i>Amount of Pictograph</i> → Select an item	Standard
■ Font Color Function (AutoArt) > <i>Sending Options</i> → <i>AutoArt Settings</i> → <i>Font Color</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	OFF
■ Font Size Function (AutoArt) > <i>Sending Options</i> → <i>AutoArt Settings</i> → <i>Font Size</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	OFF

■ Background Color Function (AutoArt) > <i>Sending Options</i> → <i>AutoArt Settings</i> → <i>Background Color</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON
■ Maximum Incoming Message Size > <i>Incoming Options</i> → <i>Download Size Limit</i> → <i>300KB</i> or <i>2MB</i>	2MB
■ Auto Retrieval > <i>Incoming Options</i> → <i>Auto Retrieve Size</i> → Select an item	Up to 1MB
■ Limit Auto-retrieval by Message Type > <i>Incoming Options</i> → <i>Auto Retrieve for</i> → <i>Selected Messages</i> → <i>Address Stored in PB</i> or <i>SoftBank Domain Only</i> ¹ → [Finish]	All Messages
■ Auto-play Attached Music Files ² > <i>Incoming Options</i> → <i>Auto Sound Play</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	OFF

¹ Including messages received from Disney Mobile

² When multiple sound files are attached, the first file plays.

PC Mail Settings

From ► Main Menu ► Messaging ► Settings
► PC Mail Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Auto-retrieve for New Messages > <i>Check New Mail</i> → <i>Auto Check</i> → Select an account (<input type="radio"/> to toggle ON/OFF) → [Finish]	ON*
■ Set Auto-retrieve Interval/Condition > <i>Check New Mail</i> → <i>Check Interval</i> → Select an item	2 hours
■ Auto-retrieve (while Abroad) > <i>Check New Mail</i> → <i>Auto Check in Roaming</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	OFF
■ Disable Auto-retrieval between Set Time Period > <i>Check New Mail</i> → <i>Inactivate Time</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> (→ For <i>ON</i> , enter time)	ON (Start time: 22:00/End time: 06:00)

* Setting automatically turns **ON** once account is registered.

SMS Settings

From ► Main Menu ► Messaging ► Settings
► SMS Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Change SMS Center Number* > <i>Message Center</i> → <input type="radio"/> [Select] → Enter SMS Center number → [Finish]	+819066519300
■ Default Text Entry Language > <i>Set Input Character</i> → <i>Japanese (70 char.)</i> or <i>English (160char.)</i>	Japanese (70char.)

* Do not change Message Center number unless instructed so by SoftBank. Changing Message Center number may disable SMS.

Settings Internet

Browser Display Settings/Memory Manager

Yahoo! Keitai

From ► Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► Set Yahoo! Keitai

PC Site Browser

From ► Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► PC Site Browser
► Set PC Site Browser

Direct Browser

From ► Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► Direct Browser
► Set Direct Browser

Setting/Operation	Default
Font Size > <i>Font Size</i> → Select a size	Normal
Scroll Unit > <i>Scroll Unit</i> → Select an item	Single Line
Images On/Off > <i>Downloads</i> → <i>Display Image</i> → ON or OFF	ON
Sound On/Off > <i>Downloads</i> → <i>Play Sounds</i> → ON or OFF	ON
Change Pointer (Scroll) Speed¹ > <i>Pointer Speed</i> → Select a speed	Medium Speed

Show/Hide Warning Messages when Activating PC Site Browser or Switching to Yahoo! Keitai² > <i>Warning Messages</i> → <i>PC Site Browser</i> (when activating) or <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> (when switching) → ON or OFF	ON
Clear Cache > <i>Memory Manager</i> → <i>Clear Cache</i> → YES	—
Delete Cookies > <i>Memory Manager</i> → <i>Delete Cookies</i> → YES	—
Delete User ID or Password Entered when Authentication is Required > <i>Memory Manager</i> → <i>Delete Certificates</i> → YES	—
Set Data Storage Location to microSD Card³ > <i>Save Settings</i> → <i>Phone</i> or <i>microSD</i>	Phone

¹ PC Site Browser/Direct Browser only

² PC Site Browser only

³ Yahoo! Keitai Browser only

Security Settings

Yahoo! Keitai

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Yahoo!** ► **Set Yahoo! Keitai**
 ► **Security**

PC Site Browser

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Yahoo!** ► **PC Site Browser**
 ► **Set PC Site Browser** ► **Security**

Direct Browser

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Yahoo!** ► **Direct Browser**
 ► **Set Direct Browser** ► **Security**

Setting/Operation	Default
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Auto Send Manufacturer's Number (for Authentication)¹ > <i>Manufacture Number</i> → ON or OFF 	ON
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Referer Information > <i>Send Referer</i> → ON or OFF 	ON
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Cookie Storage > <i>Cookies</i> → Select an item 	ON
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Script Execution in PC Site/Direct Browser² > <i>Script</i> → Select an item 	ON
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ View Server Certificates Issued by Certificate Authorities > <i>Root Certificates</i> → Select an item 	—

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Authentication Information > <i>Certificate Retention</i> → Select an item 	Keep While Browsing
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Show/Hide Confirmation when Connecting to Secure Site > <i>Secure Prompt</i> → ON or OFF 	ON

¹ Yahoo! Keitai Browser/PC Site Browser only

² PC Site Browser/Direct Browser only

Reset

Yahoo! Keitai

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Yahoo!** ► **Reset**

PC Site Browser

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Yahoo!** ► **PC Site Browser**
 ► **Reset**


Direct Browser

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Yahoo!** ► **Direct Browser** ► **Reset**

Setting/Operation	Default
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Reset Browser Settings > <i>Restore Defaults</i> → YES → Enter Phone Password 	—
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Initialize Browser > <i>Initialized Browser</i> → YES → Enter Phone Password 	—

Settings S! Appli

From ► Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Volume > <i>Volume</i> →  to adjust volume	Level 4
■ Backlight On/Off ¹ > <i>Display Backlight</i> → Select an item	Follow General Setting ²
■ Vibration > <i>Vibration</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON
■ Update S! Appli Information on microSD Card from Another Handset > <i>Synchronize microSD</i>	—

¹ Backlight does not go out completely when S! Appli is active.

² Back Light Time setting (☞ P.18-5) applies.

Settings Osaifu-Keitai®

From ► Main Menu ► Tools ► Osaifu-Keitai
► IC Card Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ View IC Card Status > <i>IC Card Status</i>	—
■ Set Handset Response to Commands from Reader/Writer > <i>Interface Settings</i> → Enter Phone Password → Select an item → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	All ON

Settings S! GPS Navi Settings

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Tools** ► **S! GPS Navi**
 ► **NAVI Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Select Navi Appli to Activate > <i>Select Navi Appli</i> → Select a Navi Appli 	NAVITIME
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Save Current Map URL > <i>Map URL Settings</i> → Highlight <Not Recorded> → [Edit] → <i>URL Name</i> → Enter a name → <i>Map URL</i> → Enter a URL ("http://" or "https://") → [Finish] 	—
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Select Map URL > <i>Map URL Settings</i> → Select a name 	NAVITIME
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Edit/Delete Map URL* > <i>Map URL Settings</i> → Highlight a name → [Menu] → <i>Edit</i> or <i>Delete</i> 	—
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Positioning Lock On/Off > <i>Positioning Lock</i> → Enter Phone Password → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> 	OFF
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Show/Hide Confirmation when Sending Location Information > <i>Send Location Info</i> → Enter Phone Password → <i>Send with Check</i> (Show confirmation every time) or <i>Send without Check</i> (Send location information without showing confirmation) 	Send with Check

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Show/Hide Notification of Incoming Location Provision Request > <i>Notification Setting</i> → Enter Phone Password → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> 	ON
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Set Positioning Ringtone/Vibrator/Ringtone Duration > <i>Recv Location Request</i> → <i>Ringtone</i>, <i>Vibration Alert</i> or <i>Ringtone Duration</i> → Set individual item 	Ringtone: Pattern 2 Vibrator Alert: Pattern 1 Ringtone Duration: 05 seconds

* Pre-installed NAVITIME cannot be edited or deleted.

Default Settings

Default settings vary by handset color as below.

- For operations, refer to respective setting sections.

Setting		White	Black	Pompadour Pink	Gold	
Notification Light (☞ P.18-10)	Incoming	Voice Call	A-Signal	B-Signal	C-Signal	D-Signal
		Video Call	A-Signal	B-Signal	C-Signal	D-Signal
		Message	A-Rhythm	B-Rhythm	C-Rhythm	D-Rhythm
Display Settings (☞ P.18-3 to 7)	Stand-by Display (Normal Position)	White 1	Black 1	Pink 1	Gold 1	
	Stand-by Display (Viewer Position)	White 2	Black 2	Pink 2	Gold 2	
	Outgoing Image (Call/Message)	White	Black	White	Gold	
	Incoming Image (Call/Message)	White	Black	White	Gold	
	Menu Icons	White	Black	Pink	Gold	
	Color Scheme	White	Black	Pink	Gold	

Confirming Settings

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings
► Confirm Settings

■ Confirmable Settings

- Back Light Time
 - View Blind
 - Volume
 - Shikkari Talk
 - Noise Reduction
 - Select Network
 - Work with Style
 - Motion Control Setting
- ★ appears for items changed from default settings.

Appendix

Function List	19-2
Troubleshooting	19-10
Warning Signs	19-12
Software Update	19-12
Quick Open Menu	19-14
Key Assignments (5-touch Mode)	19-15
Key Assignments (2-touch Mode)	19-16
Symbol List	19-17
Character Code List	19-18
Weather Indicator List	19-23
Memory List	19-24
Specifications	19-25
Index	19-26
Warranty & Service	19-32
Warranty	19-32
After-Sales Service	19-32
Customer Service	19-33



Function List


From Main Menu, press key corresponding to a menu number for direct access (☞ P.1-19).

Example: To select *S! Mail Settings* in Messaging menu:


1 first column 0 second column 3 third column

① (Messaging) → ② (Settings) → ③ (S! Mail Settings)

- To select ①:  → ①; To select ②:  → ②
- When Menu Icons are set to Basic or Customize, first column of function number is not available. Select a menu from Main Menu; then select a function number (second column in table).


 Messaging		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
1	Messaging	—
1	Incoming Mail	—
1	1 Received	P.14-3
2	2 ユーザーフォルダ 1	P.14-3
3	3 ユーザーフォルダ 2	P.14-3
4	4 ユーザーフォルダ 3	P.14-3
5	5 Spam Folder	P.14-3
2	Create New	P.14-4
3	Retrieve New	P.14-16
4	Drafts	P.14-17
5	Templates	—
1	1 Download Templates	P.14-11
6	Sent/Unsent	—
1	1 Sent/Unsent	P.14-3
2	2 ユーザーフォルダ 1	P.14-3
3	3 ユーザーフォルダ 2	P.14-3


1	6	4 ユーザーフォルダ 3	P.14-3
7		Server Mail	—
1		1 Retrieve Mail List	P.14-15
2		2 Retrieve All	P.14-15
3		3 Delete All	P.14-16
4		4 Server Mail Memory	P.14-16
8		Create New PC Mail	P.14-26
9		Create New SMS	P.14-8
0		Settings	—
1		1 Custom Mail Address	P.14-4
2		2 Universal Settings	P.18-11, P.18-20
3		3 S! Mail Settings	P.18-21
4		4 PC Mail Settings	P.18-22
5		5 SMS Settings	P.18-22
①		① Memory Status	P.14-3


 Yahoo! (Yahoo! Keitai)		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
2	Yahoo!	—
1	1 Yahoo! Keitai	P.15-4
2	2 Menu List	P.15-4
3	3 Bookmarks	P.15-9
4	4 Saved Pages	P.15-9
5	5 Web Search	P.15-4
6	6 Enter URL	—
1	1 Direct Entry	P.15-4
2	2 URL History List	P.15-4
7	7 History	P.15-5


2	8	PC Site Browser	—	
		1	Homepage	P.15-5
		2	Bookmarks	P.15-9
		3	Saved Pages	P.15-9
		4	Web Search	P.15-6
		5	Enter URL	P.15-6
		6	History	P.15-6
		7	Yahoo! Keitai	P.15-4
		8	Direct Browser	P.15-5
		9	Set PC Site Browser	P.18-23
	0	Reset	P.18-24	
	9	Direct Browser	P.15-5	
		1	Homepage	P.15-5
		2	Bookmarks	P.15-9
		3	Saved Pages	P.15-9
		4	Web Search	P.15-6
		5	Enter URL	P.15-6
6		History	P.15-6	
7		Yahoo! Keitai	P.15-4	
8		PC Site Browser	P.15-5	
9		Set Direct Browser	P.18-23	
0	Reset	P.18-24		
0	Set Yahoo! Keitai	—		
	1	Font Size	P.18-23	
	2	Scroll Unit	P.18-23	
	3	Downloads	P.18-23	
	4	Memory Manager	P.18-23	
	5	Security	P.18-24	
	6	Save Settings	P.18-23	


2	①	Reset	—	
		1	Restore Defaults	P.18-24
		2	Initialized Browser	P.18-24

 S! Appli				
		Menu Number/Function Name	Page	
3	S! Appli	—	—	
		1	S! Appli List	—
	2	1	Download S! Appli	P.16-2
		2	Osaifu-Keitai	—
		1	Lifestyle-Appli	P.13-10, P.16-2
	3	2	IC Card Settings	P.13-12
		1	S! Appli Settings	—
		2	Volume	P.18-25
		3	Display Backlight	P.18-25
	4	4	Vibration	P.18-25
		4	Synchronize microSD	P.18-25
		4	S! Appli History	P.16-3
	5	Information	P.16-2	

 News/Entertainment		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
4	News/Entertainment	—
1	S! Info Ch./Weather	—
1	What's New?	P.8-2
2	History	P.8-3
3	Register/Cancel	P.8-2
4	Get Latest Contents	P.8-2
5	Weather Indicator	P.8-3
2	S! Quick News	—
1	S! Quick News List	P.8-5
2	Settings	P.18-18
3	Free Contents	P.8-6
4	S! Contents Store	P.8-6
5	Post Blog	P.8-7

 Camera		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
5	Camera	—
1	Digicam Mode	P.6-7
2	Photo Mode	P.6-8
3	Video Camera	P.6-8
4	Picture Album	P.6-16, P.10-24
5	Videos	P.6-16

 Videos/Music		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
6	Videos/Music	P.1-27

 Tools		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
7	Tools	—
1	Alarms	P.13-7
2	Calendar	P.13-2
3	Calculator	P.13-8
4	Notepad	P.13-8
5	Tasks	P.13-5
6	Osaifu-Keitai	—
1	Lifestyle-Appli	P.13-10
2	IC Card Settings	P.13-12, P.18-25
7	Dictionary	P.13-13
8	Sound Recorders	—
1	Voice Call Data	P.2-16
2	Video Call Data	P.2-16
3	Answer Phone Setting	P.2-15
4	Voice Recorder	P.13-14
5	Voice Announce	P.13-14
9	Bar Code Reader	—
1	Scan Barcodes	P.13-15
2	Saved Data List	P.13-16
0	S! GPS Navi	—
1	Navi Appli	P.17-3
2	Current Location	P.17-2
3	Location Navi	P.17-3
4	Location Logs	P.17-3
5	NAVI Settings	P.18-26

7	①	Bluetooth	—
	1	Search&Paired Device	P.11-7
	2	Bluetooth OFF/Bluetooth ON	P.11-8
	3	Accept Registered	P.11-9
	4	Dialup Rgstry Standby	P.11-10
	5	Receive via Bluetooth	P.11-9
	6	My Devices Settings	P.18-19
	②	Wi-Fi	—
	1	ON/OFF	P.11-12
	2	Access Point Search	P.11-13
	3	Profile Lists/Settings	P.11-13
	4	Wi-Fi/3G Switch Conf.	P.11-16
	5	Connection Status	P.11-15
	6	MAC Address	P.11-16
	7	Phone Password Lock	P.11-16
	③	Receive via Infrared	—
	1	Receive	P.11-3
	2	Receive All	P.11-4
	④	Music Player	—
	1	All Tracks	P.9-6
	2	Play List	P.9-6
3	Artist	P.9-6	
4	Album	P.9-6	
5	Genre	P.9-6	

7	⑤	microSD Backup	—
	1	Phone Book	P.10-20
	2	Calendar	P.10-20
	3	Tasks	P.10-20
	4	Incoming Mail	P.10-20
	5	Sent Messages	P.10-20
	6	Unsent Messages	P.10-20
	7	Drafts	P.10-20
	8	Notepad	P.10-20
	9	Bookmarks	P.10-20
	⑥	Templates/Users Dic.	—
	1	Templates	P.3-5
	2	User's Dictionary	P.3-9
	3	Download Dictionary	P.3-10
	⑦	Pedometer	P.13-17

Data Folder		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
8	Data Folder	—
1	Pictures	—
1	Download Pictures	P.10-2
2	Picture Album	P.10-24
3	Main Folder	P.10-2
4	Camera	P.10-2
5	My Pictograms	P.10-2
6	Mail Art	P.10-2
7	Pre-installed	P.10-2
8	Handwriting	P.10-2
9	Original Animation	P.10-12

8	2	Ring Songs&Tones	—
	1	DL Ring Songs&Tones	P.10-2
	2	Main Folder	P.10-2
	3	Pre-installed	P.10-2
	4	Voice Announce	P.10-2
	5	Play List	P.10-17
	3	S! Appli	—
	1	Download S! Appli	P.16-2
	4	Widget	—
	1	Download Widget	P.7-2
	5	Music	—
	1	Main Folder	P.9-7
	2	WMA	P.9-7
	6	Videos	—
	1	Download Videos	P.10-3
	2	Main Folder	P.10-3
	3	Camera	P.10-3
	4	Pre-installed	P.10-3
	5	BD/DVD Recorder	P.10-14
	6	Play List	P.10-18
	7	Position Memory	P.10-15
7	PC Movies	—	
1	microSD	P.10-13	
2	Position Memory	P.10-15	
3	Play History	P.10-15	
8	TV	—	
1	Image	P.5-13	
2	Video	P.5-12	
3	Position Memory	P.10-3	
9	Lifestyle-Appli	—	
1	Download	P.13-10	

8	0	Books	—
	1	Download Books	P.10-3
	①	Customized Screen	—
	1	Customized Screen	P.1-22
	②	Templates	—
	1	Download Templates	P.14-11
	③	Font	—
	1	Download Font	P.1-23
	2	Main Folder	P.10-3
	3	Pre-installed	P.10-3
	④	Other Documents	—
	1	Main Folder	P.10-3




Widget (Mobile Widget)

		Menu Number/Function Name	Page
9	Widget		—
	1	Widget Store	P.7-2
	2	Widget Contents	—
	1	Download Widget	P.7-2
	3	Settings	—
	1	Delete Content	P.7-4
	2	Auto Refresh	P.18-18
	3	Auto Roaming	P.18-18
	4	Roaming Notification	P.18-18
	5	Cookies	P.18-18
6	Delete Cookies	P.18-18	
7	Pointer Speed	P.18-18	

TV		
	Menu Number/Function Name	Page
✳	TV	—
1	Watch TV	P.5-5
2	Program List	P.5-7
3	Timer Watching	P.5-13
4	Timer Recording	P.5-13
5	Recording Result	P.5-14
6	TV Link	P.5-10
7	Channel List	P.5-4
8	Channel Setting	—
1	Select Area	P.5-4
2	Automatic	P.5-4
9	User Settings	—
1	Display/Operation	P.18-13
2	Video	P.18-13
3	Display Light	P.18-13
4	Sound Effect	P.18-13
5	Recording	P.18-14
6	Data Broadcasting	P.18-14
7	ECO Mode	P.18-14
8	Reset Channel Setting	P.18-14
9	Reset Storage Area	P.18-14
0	Reset TV Settings	P.18-14
✳	Check TV Settings	P.18-14

Phone		
	Menu Number/Function Name	Page
	Phone	—
1	Phone Book	P.4-2
2	Create New Entry	P.4-3
3	Call Log	—
1	Outgoing Call Logs	P.2-13
2	Incoming Call Logs	P.2-13
4	Account Details	P.1-30, P.4-12
5	S! Addressbook BkUp	—
1	Start Sync	P.4-11
2	Details	P.4-11
6	Group	P.4-6
7	Memory Manager	P.4-9
8	Restrictions	P.12-12
9	Settings	—
1	Save Settings	P.18-12
2	Search Method	P.18-12
3	Font Size	P.18-12
4	Voice Dial	P.4-13
5	Mail Group	P.14-20
6	Forwarding Image	P.18-12
0	Memory Status	P.4-9

- Number in first column is not available for Phone.

 Settings		
#	Menu Number/Function Name	Page
#	Settings	—
1	Sound Settings	—
1	1 Ring Tones	P.18-2
2	2 Machi-Uta	P.18-2
3	3 Ringer Volume	P.18-2
4	4 Key Tone	P.18-3
5	5 Stereo/3D Sound	P.18-2
6	6 Earphone	P.18-2
7	7 Message Ring Tones	P.18-2
2	Display Settings	—
1	1 Internal Display	P.18-3
2	2 Font Size	P.18-6
3	3 Font	P.1-23
4	4 Menu Icons	P.18-4
5	5 Back Light Time	P.18-5
6	6 View Blind	P.1-30
7	7 Color	P.18-4
8	8 Private Menu	P.1-24
9	9 言語設定	P.18-4
0	0 Open for New	P.18-4
✖	✖ LCD AI	P.18-5
#	# Disp. Call/Recv #	P.18-6
①	① Describe Icons	P.1-11
3	Customized Screen	—
1	1 Customized Screen	P.1-23
2	2 Release Settings	P.1-23



#	4 Incoming Settings	—
1	1 Vibrator	P.18-2
2	2 Manner Mode Type	P.18-7
3	3 Answer Setting	P.18-8
4	4 Open-to-Ans. Call	P.18-8
5	5 Call Logs	P.12-9
6	6 Phone Book Image	P.18-8
7	7 Ring Time Settings	P.12-12
8	8 Info Notice Setting	P.18-8
9	9 Auto Answer	P.18-8
0	0 In-call Management	P.18-8
5	Phone Settings	—
1	1 Work with Style	P.18-7
2	2 Motion Control Setting	P.18-6
3	3 Touch Panel Adjustment	P.1-32
4	4 Side-keys Guard	P.12-9
5	5 Text Entry Method	P.18-11
6	6 Battery	P.18-3
7	7 Pause Dial	P.2-3
8	8 Headset Switch to Call	P.18-10
9	9 Voice Settings	P.18-12
0	0 Confirm Settings	P.18-28
✖	✖ Videos/Music Updates	P.1-27
#	# Software Update	P.19-12
①	① GPL License etc.	P.xxviii
6	Date & Time	—
1	1 Date & Time	P.18-9
2	2 World Clock	P.18-9
3	3 Daylight Savings	P.18-9
4	4 Alarm Tone	P.18-9
5	5 Time Correction	P.18-9

#	7	Security	—
	1	Privacy Key Lock	P.12-4
	2	Personal Data Lock	P.12-5
	3	IC Card Lock	P.13-12
	4	Secret Mode	P.12-10
	5	Secret Data Only	P.12-10
	6	Key Pad Dial Lock	P.12-8
	7	Reject Unknown	P.12-13
	8	Call Setting w/o ID	P.12-13
	9	All Reset	P.12-14
	0	Reset Settings	P.12-13
	*	PIN Authentication	P.12-2
	#	Change Phone Password	P.12-2
	①	Timer Lock at Close	P.12-6
	②	Lock OFF at Open	P.12-7
	③	Content Key	P.10-24
	④	Lock Message	P.12-8
	8	Call Settings	—
	1	Call Time/Cost	P.18-9
	2	Reset	P.18-9
	3	Set Max Cost Limit	P.18-9
4	Voice Mail/Call Fwding	P.2-17, P.2-18	
5	Call Waiting	P.2-20	
6	Call Barring	P.2-20	
7	Missed Call Notifi.	P.2-19	
8	Prefix	P.2-3	
9	Volume	P.18-9	
0	Shikkari Talk	P.2-5	
*	Closing Clamshell	P.18-10	
#	Hold Tones	P.18-10	
①	Noise Reduction	P.18-10	


#	8	② Quality Alarm	P.18-10
		③ Reconnect Signal	P.18-10
		④ Offline Mode	P.1-17
		⑤ Show My Number	P.2-21
		⑥ Service Numbers	P.18-10
	9	Video Call	—
		1 Incoming Video Qlty	P.18-12
		2 Select Images	P.18-12
		3 Loud Speaker	P.18-12
		4 Voice Call Auto Redial	P.18-12
		5 Switch Images	P.18-12
	0	International Call	—
		1 Int'l Dial Assist	P.2-10
		2 Select Operator	P.2-10
		3 PLMN Setting	P.2-11
		4 Operator Name	P.2-11
		5 Select Network	P.2-10
	①	Connectivity	—
		1 USB Mode	P.11-17
		2 Retrieve NW Info	P.1-16
	②	Notification Light	—
		1 Incoming	P.4-4, P.18-10
		2 Online	P.18-10
		3 Missed Call/Unread	P.18-10
		4 Clamshell Close	P.18-10
		5 Music	P.18-10
		6 Bluetooth	P.18-10
	7 IC Card	P.18-10	
	8 Confirm Status	P.18-10	

Troubleshooting



Handset does not turn on

- Was  pressed for more than one second?
- Is battery level sufficient?
- Is battery inserted properly? ( P.1-13)





Handset functions do not work after turning power on

- Does PIN Entry window appear?
PIN Authentication ( P.12-2) is **ON**. Enter PIN.



USIM not inserted After power-off Insert USIM or Inserted USIM is unavailable to this mobile phone Please insert valid one appears when handset is turned on or operations attempted

- Is USIM Card inserted correctly? ( P.1-5)
- Is SoftBank specified USIM Card inserted? ( P.1-4)
Unusable USIM Card may be inserted.
- USIM Card IC chip may be dirty.
Wipe with a clean cloth, then insert USIM Card correctly.



Keypad does not respond

- Does  appear in Standby?
Keyguard ( P.12-4) is active. Cancel it.
- Does  appear?
Privacy Key Lock is active ( P.12-4). Cancel it.







Display is blurred

- Adjust display brightness ( P.18-5).
- Is View Blind active?
Cancel View Blind ( P.1-30).




Side Key does not work while handset is closed

- Does  appear?
Side-keys Guard ( P.12-9) is **ON**.
Set to **OFF**.


Outgoing calls or Video Calls will not connect or message and Internet connections are unavailable

- Does **OUT**  appear?
Is handset out-of-range or in a location where signal is weak?
Move to a location where signal is strong.
- Does  appear?
Cancel Offline Mode ( P.1-17).
- Are you using handset overseas?
Set international settings (e.g. Select Operator) to use abroad ( P.2-10).
- Does  appear?
Personal Data Lock is set ( P.12-5). Deactivate Personal Data Lock.

Outgoing calls or Video Calls will not connect

- Is area code entered?
- Is restricting outgoing calls in Call Barring? ( P.2-20)
- Does  appear in Standby?
Total cost has reached upper limit. Set Max Cost Limit to **OFF** or execute **Reset** ( P.18-9).

Outgoing calls will not connect or busy signal sounds

- Did you enter area code?
- Is restricting outgoing calls in Call Barring? ( P.2-20)


Call is interrupted or disconnected

- Does **OUT** appear? Is handset out-of-range or in a location where signal is weak?
Move to a location where signal is strong.

Cannot start any more functions appears when a menu is opened.

- Maximum number of functions are active at the same time. Cancel current function and try again (☞ P.1-29).


Calls cannot be made via a Phone Book entry

- Entry may be saved as Secret.
Set Secret Mode or Secret Data Only **ON** (☞ P.12-10).
- Does  appear?
Personal Data Lock is set (☞ P.12-5). Deactivate Personal Data Lock.



Digital TV does not work

- Is handset out of terrestrial Digital TV broadcasting service area or in a location where airwaves are weak?
Move to a location where airwaves are strong (☞ P.5-3).

Osaifu-Keitai® does not work

- Does  appear?
Deactivate IC Card Lock (☞ P.13-12).

Wi-Fi connection unavailable

- Does  or  appear?
Turn on Wi-Fi function (☞ P.11-12).
Is handset in a location where signal is weak?
Move to a location where signal is strong.

Display clock is reset

- Replacing battery does not reset Display clock; however, if battery is removed for long periods, the clock may be reset. Set Date & Time (☞ P.18-9) or Retrieve NW Info (☞ P.1-16) again.

Cannot charge battery

- Is AC Charger (sold separately) firmly connected to handset or Desktop Holder? (☞ P.1-14)
- Is AC Charger securely plugged into an outlet?
- Is battery installed in handset correctly? (☞ P.1-13)
- Is handset correctly mounted in Desktop Holder?
- Make sure handset, battery, Desktop Holder and AC Charging terminals are clean.
- Battery may not charge beyond +5°C and +35°C.
- Battery may need to be replaced.




Handset/accessories feel warm

- AC Charger/Desktop Holder may warm during charging.
Handset may warm during long use. This is normal if you can hold it comfortably. Low temperature burns may occur if handset is held against skin for long periods.

Battery Operating Time is greatly reduced


- Battery Operating Time may be reduced by environmental factors such as temperature, charging conditions or signal strength, as well as by operations or settings. See "Specifications" (☞ P.19-25) and "Battery Time" (☞ P.1-12).

Warning Signs

Problem	Causes and Remedies
OUT appears	Handset is out-of-range. Move to a location where signal is strong.
 appears	Side-keys Guard (☞ P.12-9) is ON . To activate Side Key while handset is closed, set Side-keys Guard to OFF .
 appears	Keyguard is active (☞ P.12-4). Cancel Keyguard to use keys. Answer calls even if Keyguard is active.
 appears	Privacy Key Lock is active (☞ P.12-4). Cancel it to use handset. Answer calls even if Privacy Key Lock is active.
Low battery message appears and battery alarm tone sounds	Battery is low. Charge (☞ P.1-14) or replace battery (☞ P.1-13).

Software Update

Check for 942P software updates and download as required.

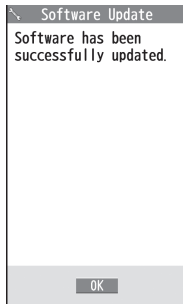
- Transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking for updates, downloading and rewriting).
- Software Update may take approximately 30 minutes.
- Fully charge battery beforehand. Even if  appears, low battery message may appear. In this case, charge battery until Notification Light/Charging Indicator goes out.
- Select a place where signal is strong and stable.
- Other functions are unavailable during update.
- Software Update does not affect Phone Book entries, files saved in Data Folder or other content, but it is recommended that you create a backup of any important information and data (note that some files cannot be copied).
SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from loss of data, information, etc.
- Do not remove battery during the update. Update will fail.
- Software Update failure may disable handset. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (☞ P.19-33).

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings
► Software Update ► Software Update

1 [YES] → Follow onscreen instructions

After download is complete, handset automatically restarts and update begins.

When update is complete, **Software has been successfully updated.** appears. Handset restarts then Information appears. Entire process takes approximately 60 seconds.



Update Results

When Information window appears,

Software Updt. Result →

- When Information does not appear,

Main Menu ► Settings
► Phone Settings
► Software Update
► Update Results



Scheduled Update

Confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press or wait ten seconds for update to start.

Note

- If handset does not power on after Software Update, remove then re-insert battery and try again. If handset still does not power on, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (☎ P.19-33).
- SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from loss of data, information, etc.
- Alarm tone does not sound during update.
- For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Quick Open Menu

When Menu Icons is set to **Basic** or **Customize** (☞ P.18-4), press menu numbers in Main Menu to open the following functions.

Example: To open Notepad:





In Standby,  →  

Menu	#
Alarm	44
Calendar	45
Calculator	85
Notepad	42
Tasks	95
Sound Recorders	55
Receive via Infrared	79
Templates/Users Dictionary	38
Pictures folder	46
Ring Songs&Tones folder	16
Phone Book Settings	26
Ring Tones	13
Ringer Volume	50
Key Tone	30
Stereo/3D Sound	64
Earphone/Speaker Settings	51
Message Ring Tones	68
Internal Display	56

Menu	#
Font Settings	66
Menu Icons	57
Back Light Time	70
Color Theme	86
Private Menu Settings	52
Language	15
Describe Icons	36
Vibrator	54
Manner Mode Type	20
Answer Setting	58
Ring Time Settings	90
Info Notice Setting	65
Auto Answer	94
Text Entry Method	35
Date & Time	31
Secret Mode	40
Secret Data Only	41
Call Setting w/o ID	10
Reset Settings	23
Change Phone Password	29
Call Time/Cost	61
Reset Total Duration/Cost	60
Closing Clamshell	18
Noise Reduction	76

Menu	#
Quality Alarm	75
Reconnect Signal	77
Show My Number	17
Notification Light	89

Key Assignments (5-touch Mode)

Key \ Display	漢	カナ	abc	123
①	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ ¹	. / @ - :  ¹  ² _ 1	1
②	かきくけこ	カキクケコ ²	a b c A B C ²	2
③	さしすせそ	サシスセソ ³	d e f D E F ³	3
④	たちつとっ	タチツテトッ ⁴	g h i G H I ⁴	4
⑤	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ ⁵	j k l J K L ⁵	5
⑥	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ ⁶	m n o M N O ⁶	6
⑦	まみむめも	マミムメモ ⁷	p q r s P Q R S ⁷	7
⑧	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ ⁸	t u v T U V ⁸	8
⑨	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ ⁹	w x y z W X Y Z ⁹	9
⑩	わをんわー	ワヲン  ² - 0	0	0
				[Press and hold] + ⁴
✳	 ³ Pictograph/Symbol/Smiley/URL list ⁵		Pictograph/Symbol/Smiley/ URL list ⁵	*
	[Press and hold] Templates			
#	、 。 ? ! ・ (Single-byte Space)		. , ? ! ' - & () ¥ (Single-byte Space)	#

¹ Appears when entering single-byte character.

⁴ Not Available in S! Mail text entry window.

² Appears when entering double-byte character.


⁵ Press  or  to toggle tabs while Pictograph/Symbol/Smiley/URL list is open.

³ Added to highlighted character.

● In alphanumerics mode, last entered case appears first.

● To toggle input modes:  [Mode] → Select a input character

● To toggle upper/lower case characters:  after entering hiragana, katakana or alphanumerics

● To insert line feeds:  [Line FD]

Key Assignments (2-touch Mode)

Kanji (Hiragana) Mode

<Upper Case Mode>

		Second digit														
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0					
First digit	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E					
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J					
	3	さ	し	ず	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O					
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T					
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y					
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/					
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&								
	8	や	(ゆ)	よ	*	#								
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5					
	0	わ	を	ん	°	°	6	7	8	9	0					

<Lower Case Mode>

		Second digit														
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0					
First digit	1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e					
	2						f	g	h	i	j					
	3						k	l	m	n	o					
	4			っ			p	q	r	s	t					
	5						u	v	w	x	y					
	6						z									
	7															
	8	や		ゆ		よ										
	9															
	0	わ			,	。										

Katakana Mode

<Upper Case Mode>

		Second digit														
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0					
First digit	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E					
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J					
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O					
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T					
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y					
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/					
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&								
	8	ヤ	(ユ)	ヨ	*	#								
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5					
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン	°	°	6	7	8	9	0					

<Lower Case Mode>

		Second digit														
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0					
First digit	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e					
	2						f	g	h	i	j					
	3						k	l	m	n	o					
	4			ッ			p	q	r	s	t					
	5						u	v	w	x	y					
	6						z									
	7															
	8	ヤ		ユ		ヨ										
	9															
	0	ワ ¹		,	.											

Alphanumerics Mode

		Second digit															
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0						
First digit	1	"	\$	%	'	+	a	b	c	d	e						
	2	.	.	:	:	<	f	g	h	i	j						
	3	=	>	@	[]	k	l	m	n	o						
	4	^	_	'	'	'	2	{		p	q	r	s	t			
	5	}	~	1	2			u	v	w	x	y					
	6						z	?	!	-	/						
	7						¥	&									
	8		()		*	#									
	9						1	2	3	4	5						
	0						6	7	8	9	0						

■ Toggle upper/lower case

¹ Appears when entering double-byte character.

² Appears when entering single-byte character.

Note

- A space is entered by pressing key corresponding to a blank where no character is assigned.
- Enter "" or "" by pressing (✖) after entering characters. Press (✖) once for "", twice for "".
- For number mode, see "Key Assignments (5-touch Mode)" (📖 P.19-15).

Symbol List

Double-byte Symbol List

(Space)	、	。	，	．	・	：	；	？	！
”	”	’	、	”	^	—	—	、	ゞ
>	ゞ	〃	全	々	メ	○	—	—	-
/	\	~	〃		…	…	’	”	
”	()	[]	[]	{ }	<				
>	<	>	「 」	『 』	【 】	+			
-	±	×	÷	=	≠	<	>	≦	≧
∞	∴	♂	♀	°	’	”	°	¥	\$
¢	£	%	#	&	*	@	§	☆	★
○	●	◎	◇	◆	□	■	△	▲	▽
▼	※	〒	→	←	↑	↓	≡	∈	∋
⊆	⊃	⊂	⊄	∩	∪	∩	∪	⇒	
⇔	∨	∃	∠	⊥	∩	∪	∩	≡	≐
≪	≫	√	∞	∞	∴	∫	∫	Å	%
#	b	♪	†	‡	¶	○	わ	ゐ	ゑ
ワ	井	工	ヴ	カ	ケ	A	B	Γ	Δ
E	Z	H	Θ	I	K	Λ	M	N	Ξ
O	Π	P	Σ	T	Υ	Φ	X	Ψ	Ω

α	β	γ	δ	ε	ζ	η	θ	ι	κ
λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ	σ	τ	υ
φ	χ	ψ	ω	A	B	B	Γ	Д	E
Ё	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	О
П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш
Щ	Ъ	Ы	Ь	Э	Ю	Я	а	б	в
г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й	к	л
м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у	ф	х
ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э	ю	я
—		┌	┐	└	┘	├	┤	┬	┴
┼	┼	┼	┼	┼	┼	┼	┼	┼	┼
┼	┼	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧
⑨	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱
⑲	⑳	I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII
IX	X	ミ	キ	ウ	ル	グ	ト	ル	ル
ル	フ	ロ	ル	セン	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル
km	mg	kg	cc	m ³	平成	、	No	KK	

TEL	Ⓛ	Ⓜ	Ⓝ	Ⓟ	Ⓠ	株	有	代	明
大	正	昭和	≡	≡	∫	∫	Σ	√	⊥
∠	∠	∴	∩	∪					

Single-byte Symbol List

(Space)	!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	()
*	+	,	-	.	/	:	;	< =
>	?	@	[¥]	^	_	' {
	}	~	。	「	」	、	・	ゝ
°								

Character Code List










First Three Digits	Last Digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010	→	←	↔	↕	↗	↘	↙	↚	↛	↜
011	↞	↠	↡	↢	↣	↤	↥	↦	↧	↨
012	↩	↪	↫	↬	↭	↮	↯	↰	↱	↲
013	↳	↴	↵	↶	↷	↸	↹	↺	↻	↼
014	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺
015	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾
016	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼
017	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽
018	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾
019	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿
020	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺
021	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻
022	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼
023	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽
024	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾
026	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿
027	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺
028	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻
029	↿	↺	↻	↼	↽	↾	↿	↺	↻	↼
031	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
032	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
033	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
034	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
035	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
036	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
037	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
038	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
039	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
040	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
041	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
042	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
043	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
044	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
045	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
046	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
047	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
048	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3





First Three Digits	Last Digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
050	オ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	サ	シ	ス	セ
051	ソ	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	ナ	ニ	ノ	ネ
052	ヒ	フ	ブ	パ	ペ	ポ	マ	ミ	モ	メ
053	ヤ	ユ	ヨ	ラ	リ	ロ	カ	キ	ク	ケ
054	コ	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	タ	チ	ツ	テ
055	ト	ナ	ニ	ノ	ネ	ヒ	フ	ブ	パ	ペ
056	ポ	マ	ミ	モ	メ	ヤ	ユ	ヨ	ラ	リ
057	ロ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	サ	シ	ス	セ
058	ソ	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	ナ	ニ	ノ	ネ
060	A	Λ	Φ	B	M	X	Γ	N	Ψ	α
061	K	Y	θ	κ	ν	μ	Δ	Ω	β	λ
062	θ	σ	ι	τ	κ	ν	μ	Δ	Ω	β
063	θ	σ	ι	τ	κ	ν	μ	Δ	Ω	β
064	θ	σ	ι	τ	κ	ν	μ	Δ	Ω	β
065	θ	σ	ι	τ	κ	ν	μ	Δ	Ω	β
066	θ	σ	ι	τ	κ	ν	μ	Δ	Ω	β
067	θ	σ	ι	τ	κ	ν	μ	Δ	Ω	β
070	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	A	B	C	D
071	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
072	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X
073	Y	Z	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
074	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R
075	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	A	B
076	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
077	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V
078	W	X	Y	Z	A	B	C	D	E	F
080	G	Q	O	F	P	Z	X	Γ	N	Ψ
081	α	λ	β	Ω	Δ	μ	κ	ν	τ	ι
082	ε	ο	ζ	π	ρ	σ	θ	κ	ν	μ
083	δ	ω	ε	ο	ζ	π	ρ	σ	θ	κ
130	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
131	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
132	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
133	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
134	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
135	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
136	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
137	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
138	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
139	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
160	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
161	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
162	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
163	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
164	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
165	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
166	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
167	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
168	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
169	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
170	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
171	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
172	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
173	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
174	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
175	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
176	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
177	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
178	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
179	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
180	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
181	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
182	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
183	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
184	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
185	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
186	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
187	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
188	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
189	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
190	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
191	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
192	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
193	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0





First Three Digits										Last Digit										First Three Digits										Last Digit																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																				
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
679	答	匏	匏	匏	匏	匏	匏	匏	匏	722	莫	莎	莊	荳	葱	荳	荳	荳	荳	765	賈	賈	賈	賈	賈	賈	賈	賈	賈	708	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	766	賈	賈	賈	賈	賈	賈	賈	賈	709	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	767	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	768	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	769	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	770	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	771	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	772	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	773	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	774	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	775	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	776	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	777	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	778	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	779	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	780	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	781	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	782	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	783	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	784	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	785	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	786	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	787	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	788	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	789	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	790	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	791	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	792	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	793	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	794	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	795	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	796	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	797	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	798	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	799	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	800	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	801	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	802	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	803	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	804	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	805	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	806	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	807	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳	荳





Weather Indicator List





- Indicators and categories are subject to change without prior notice.




Weather	
	Clear (day)
	Clear (night)
	Cloudy
	Rain
	Snow
	Thunderstorm
	Precipitation 0%-100%
	Later
	Occasionally




Pollen Level	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Very High

Cherry Blossom	
	Blossoms Opening
	Near Full Bloom
	Peak Bloom
	Past Peak

Fall Foliage	
	No Color
	Moderate Color
	Peak Color
	Past Peak

UV Level	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Very High

Typhoon	
	Formed
	Approaching
	Severe

Other Information	
	Heavy Rain
	Strong Winds
	Notifications

Memory List

Data Folder	Up to 3500 items/up to 300 MB (Including pre-installed data)
--------------------	---

- Shared with S! Appli List
(One S! Appli corresponds up to 6 MB.)

Calendar Events	Up to 1000 items
------------------------	------------------

Phone Book	Up to 1000 items
-------------------	------------------

Messaging	Incoming Mail	Up to 3000 items
	Sent/Unsent	Up to 1000 items

- Combined total of SMS, S! Mail and PC Mail

Internet	Yahoo! Keitai	Saved Pages	Up to 20 items/750 KB
		Bookmarks	Up to 100 items
		URL History	URL Entry: Up to 20 items URL Access: Up to 100 items*
		Cache	750 KB
	PC Site Browser	Saved Pages	Up to 20 items/1150 KB
		Bookmarks	Up to 100 items
		URL History	URL Entry: Up to 20 items URL Access: Up to 100 items*
		Cache	1150 KB
	Direct Browser	Saved Pages	Up to 20 items/1150 KB
		Bookmarks	Up to 100 items
		URL History	URL Entry: Up to 20 items URL Access: Up to 100 items*
		Cache	1150 KB

* The number of savable items varies depending on URL length.

Specifications

942P

Weight (including battery)	150 g*	
Dimensions (closed)	51 x 114 x 19 (thinnest part) /21 (thickest part) mm*	
Standby Time	3G	600 hours*
	GSM	350 hours*
Talk Time	3G	220 minutes*
	Video Call	140 minutes*
	GSM	230 minutes*
TV Reception Time	Normal Mode	3.4 hours*
	ECO Mode	4.7 hours*
Charging Time	AC Charger	130 minutes*
	In-Car Charger	130 minutes*
Maximum Output	3G	0.25 W
	GSM	2.0 W

* Approximate value

- Values above were calculated with battery installed.
- Charging time is an average measured within temperatures of 5°C to 35°C.
- Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals.
- Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals.
- TV-Reception Time is an average measured using Earphone Microphone, with stable signals.

- Talk Time and Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, temperature, etc.).
- Talk Time and Standby Time may decrease when an S! Appli is active.

Battery

Voltage	3.7 V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	800 mAh
Dimensions	37 x 5.4 x 37 mm*

* Approximate value

Desktop Holder

Input Voltage/Current	DC 5.4 V/700 mA
Output Voltage/Current	DC 5.4 V/700 mA
Charging Temperature	5°C to 35°C
Dimensions	66 x 24 x 128 mm*

* Approximate value

- Specifications subject to change without notice.

Index

Numerics

3G 2-10

A

Access History

PC Site Browser/Direct Browser 15-6

Yahoo! Keitai 15-5

Account Details 1-30, 4-12

Address (Adding/editing/deleting) 14-9

AF Tracking 6-10

After-Sales Service 19-32

Alarms 13-6

All Reset 12-14

Alternative Image 2-6

Answer Phone 2-15

Answering Calls

Video Calls 2-8

Voice Calls 2-5

Attachments

Adding 14-9

Deleting 14-9

Opening/saving 14-14

Auto Answer 18-8

Auto Focus Lock 6-9

Auto review 6-7, 18-16

Auto Save (Camera) 18-16, 18-17

Auto timer 6-5, 6-12

Auto-sort (Messages) 14-17

AutoArt 14-7

AutoShutter 6-5, 6-13

AV Output 11-18

B

Background Music 9-7

Backlight

Display 18-5

S! Appli 18-25

Video Calls 2-12

Backup

microSD Card 10-21

S! Address Back-up (SAB) 4-10

Bar Code Reader 13-15

Basic Operations

Handset x

Internet 15-7

Battery 1-12

Battery Level 1-11, 1-13

BD/DVD Recorder 10-14

Blogging 8-7

Bluetooth® 11-6

Bluetooth® Passkey 11-8

Bookmarks 15-9

Books folder 10-3

Brightness

Backlight 18-5

Camera 6-5

Video Calls 18-13

Browser (Initializing) 18-24

C

Cache Memory 15-3

Calculator 13-8

Calendar 13-2

Calendar Events 13-2

Call Barring 2-20

Call Cost 18-9

Call Forwarding 2-17

Call Log 2-13

Show/Hide 12-9

Call Operations 2-11

Call Rejection 12-12, 12-13

Call Restrictions 12-12

Call Settings 18-9

Call Time 18-9

Call Waiting 2-20

Caller ID 2-3, 2-21

Camera [Section Contents] 6-1

Center Access Code 1-28

Channel Setting 5-4

Character Code (Kuten Code)

Character Code List 19-18

Input Options 3-5

Charge Limit 18-9

Charging 1-14

Clock Display 18-5

Closing Clamshell 18-10

Color Scheme 18-4

Confirming Settings 18-28

Content Key 10-5

Continuous Shooting 6-12

Control Key.....	1-32
Conversion Methods.....	3-6
Cookies Setting/Deleting	
Internet	18-23, 18-24
Mobile Widget.....	18-18
Copy Protected Files.....	10-5
Country/Region Code	2-10
Customer Service.....	19-33
Customize Menu.....	1-34
Customized Screen	1-22

D

Data Folder.....	10-2
Date & Time Settings.....	18-9
Deleting	
Calendar events	13-5
Messages.....	14-22
Phone Book	4-9
S! Appli.....	16-4
Delivery Report	14-11
Dictionary	13-13
Digital TV [Section Contents]	5-1
Digital TV Settings.....	18-13
Direct Browser.....	15-5
Display.....	1-10
Display Indicators.....	1-10
Display Lock	1-33
Display Settings.....	18-3

Download

Customized Screen.....	1-22
Fonts.....	1-23
From web pages.....	15-12
Lifestyle-Appli	13-10
Music.....	9-3
S! Appli.....	16-2
S! Contents Store	8-6
Templates	14-11
Widgets	7-2
Download Dictionary.....	3-10
Drafts.....	14-17
Driving Mode.....	1-17, 18-7

E

Earpiece Volume	
Video Calls.....	2-7
Voice Calls	2-5
Emergency Calls (110, 119, 118)	2-4
Emergency Positioning Request	2-4

F

Face Detection.....	6-15
Focus Setting.....	6-5, 6-15
Folder/files.....	10-16
Font Settings	1-23
Font Size	
Call Logs.....	18-6
Collective Setting.....	18-6
Internet	18-6
Messaging	18-6
Phone Book	18-6
Text entry	18-6
Function List	19-2

G

Global Roaming Service	2-9
Graphic Mail	14-6
Group Settings (Phone Book).....	4-6
GSM	2-10

H	
Handset	
Menus.....	1-18
Parts & Functions	1-6
Power On/Off.....	1-15
Handset Security [Section Contents]....	12-1
Handwriting Diary	3-13
Handwriting Photo/Memo.....	3-11
Hide Call Logs/Address List	12-9
Hold	
Video Calls.....	2-12
Voice Calls	2-11
HTML messages.....	14-6
I	
iA	6-5, 6-14
IC Card Lock.....	13-12
IC Transmission	11-4
IDD Prefix	2-9
Incoming Call Logs	2-13
Information window.....	1-20
Infrared.....	11-2
Intelligent Auto	6-5, 6-14
International Call	
From abroad.....	2-9
From Japan	2-9
International Setting	2-10
Internet [Section Contents].....	15-1
ISO setting.....	6-5, 18-16

K	
Key Assignments	
2-touch	19-16
5-touch	19-15
Key Pad Dial Lock	12-8
Key Tone	18-3
Keyguard	12-4
Kuten Code (Character Code).....	19-18
L	
Language	18-4
Lifestyle-Appli	13-10
Lock Message	12-8
Lock OFF at Open	12-7

M	
Mail Group.....	14-20
Mail Security.....	12-11
Main Menu	
Normal Position.....	1-18
Viewer Position	1-34
Making Calls	
International Calls.....	2-9
Video Calls.....	2-7
Voice Calls	2-2
Manner Mode	1-16, 2-11, 2-12, 18-7
Manufacture Number	18-24
Memory List.....	19-24
Memory Manager (Internet).....	18-23
Menu Icons	18-4

Menu Numbers	1-19
Messaging [Section Contents].....	14-1
microSD Card.....	10-18
Backup.....	10-21
Check.....	10-23
Formatting.....	10-20
Synchronizing	18-25
Missed Call Notification	2-19
Mobile Widget	7-2
Mobile W-Speed	5-2
Motion Control	1-3
Music folder.....	10-2
Music Player [Section Contents].....	9-1
MyOriginal.....	6-14

N	
Network Information	1-16
New Messages	
Receiving.....	14-16
Viewing	14-12
Night mode	
Camera.....	6-5
Video Calls.....	18-13
Normal Position.....	1-2
Notepad.....	13-8
Notification Light Settings	18-10

O	
Offline Mode	1-17
Open For New.....	18-4
Open-to-Ans. Call.....	18-8
Operator Names	2-11
Optional Services	2-17
Original Animation	10-12
Osaifu Keitai®	13-9
Other Documents folder.....	10-3
Outgoing Call Logs.....	2-13
P	
Passwords.....	1-28
Passwords (Changing)	
Center Access Code	1-28
Phone Password	12-2
Security Code	2-21
PC Mail	14-2, 14-25
Account Setup	14-26
Creating/Sending.....	14-26
Settings	18-22
PC Movies.....	10-13
PC Site Browser	15-5
Pedometer	13-17
Personal Data Lock.....	12-5
Phone Book [Section Contents].....	4-1
Phone Password	1-28
Changing	12-2
Photo light setting	6-5, 6-11
Photo mode.....	6-5, 6-14
Pictographs.....	3-4

Picture Album	10-24
Pictures (Still Images)	
Capturing	6-7
Editing	10-11
Pictures folder	10-2
PIN/PIN2	1-5
Changing	12-3
PIN Authentication	12-2
PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK)	12-3
Play List	9-10
Play mode setting.....	9-6
Privacy Key Lock.....	12-4
Private Menu	1-24
PUK/PUK2	1-5, 12-3

Q	
QR Code.....	13-15
Quick Open Menu	19-14

R	
Recipients (Adding/editing/deleting) ...	14-9
Referer Information.....	18-24
Remote Lock	13-12
Reset	
All Reset	12-14
Browser Settings	18-24
Settings	12-13
Total Call Charge/Time	18-9
TV Settings	18-14
Ring Songs&Tones folder	10-2
Ring Time (Answer Phone).....	2-16
Ring Time Settings.....	12-12
Ringer Volume	18-2
Ringtone	10-7, 18-2
Ringtone Duration (Message).....	18-2
Roaming Dial Assistant.....	2-10
Root Certificates	18-24

S		
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB).....	4-10	
S! Appli [Section Contents]	16-1	
S! Contents Store	8-6	
S! GPS Navi [Section Contents].....	17-1	
S! Information Channel	8-2	
S! Mail	14-2	
Creating/sending.....	14-4	
Mail Notice.....	14-13	
Settings	18-21	
Universal Settings	18-20	
S! Quick News	8-5	
Settings	18-18	
Save		
Alarms	13-7	
Calendar Events	13-2	
Notepad	13-8	
Phone Book	4-3	
S! Information Channel.....	8-2	
S! Quick News	8-5	
Shortcuts	1-21	
User's Dictionary	3-9	
Save location		
Camera	6-5	
Phone Book	18-12	
Saved Pages.....	15-9	
Scroll Unit.....	18-23	
SD Audio.....	9-2	
Secret Data Only.....	12-10	
Secret Mail Setting.....	12-11	
Secret Mode	12-10	
Secure Remote Lock	12-7	
Security		
Data Folder.....	10-16	
Internet	18-24	
S! Appli.....	16-4	
Security Code	1-28	
Security Functions	12-2	
Server Mail	14-15	
Settings [Section Contents].....	18-1	
Shikkari Talk	2-5	
Shortcuts	1-21	
Shortcuts Menu	1-34	
Shutter sound.....	18-16, 18-17	
Side-keys Guard	12-9	
Signal Strength.....	1-10	
Simple Menu.....	1-25	
Slide Lever.....	1-32	
Slideshow	10-27	
Smileys	3-4	
SMS.....	14-2	
Creating/sending	14-8	
Settings	18-22	
Universal Settings	18-20	
Snooze	13-7	
SoftBank Utility Software	11-16	
Softkeys.....	ix	
Software Update	19-12	
Spam Filter	14-18	
Speaker ON/OFF	2-11, 2-12	
SSL.....	15-3	
Standby		
Normal Position.....	1-15	
Viewer Position	1-34	
Status Indicators	1-10	
Still Images (Picture)		
Capturing	6-7	
Editing	10-11	
Streaming.....	15-13	
Symbol List	19-17	
T		
Tasks	13-5	
Templates (Graphic Mail).....	14-6	
Text Entry/Handwriting		
[Section Contents].....	3-1	
Time Correction.....	18-9	
Timer Lock at Close	12-6	
TLS	15-3	
Touch Menus.....	1-34	
Touch Panel.....	1-31	
Text Entry	3-10	
Touch Panel Adjustment	1-32	
Touch Panel Operation Guide	1-32	
TouchAF/AE.....	6-9	

U

URL (Entering)	
PC Site Browser/Direct Browser.....	15-6
Text entry	3-4
Yahoo! Keitai.....	15-4
USB	11-17
User Mode (Manner Mode)	18-7
User's Dictionary	3-9
USIM Card.....	1-4
USIM Card Phone Book	4-3
USIM PINs.....	1-5

V

Vibrator	
Incoming alert.....	18-2
S! Appli.....	18-25
Video Call	2-6
Videos (Recording)	6-8
Videos folder	10-3
Videos/Music Menu	1-27
View Blind	1-30
Viewer Position	1-2, 1-31
Voice Announce	13-14
Voice Dial.....	4-13
Voice Mail.....	2-18
Voice Recorder.....	13-14
Volume	
Ringtone.....	18-2
S! Appli.....	18-25
Video Calls.....	2-7
Voice Calls	2-5

W

Wallpaper	
Normal Position.....	18-3
Viewer Position	18-7
Warranty.....	19-32
Weather Indicator.....	8-3
White balance	
Still Images.....	18-15
Video Calls.....	18-13
Videos.....	18-17
Widgets	7-2
Wi-Fi	11-11
WMA Files.....	9-2
Work with Style.....	18-7
World Clock	18-9

Y

Yahoo! Keitai.....	15-4
--------------------	------

Warranty & Service

Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase a 942P.

- Check name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read through contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from use of this product.

After-Sales Service

See "Troubleshooting" (☞ P.19-10) before contacting SoftBank for service or repairs. If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (☞ P.19-33) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.
- Out of warranty, any repairs are performed upon request at subscriber's expense.

Customer Service

If you have questions about SoftBank handsets or services, please call General Information.

For repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

Check phone number before you dial.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at
157 for General Information or
113 for Customer Assistance

SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**
(Please take care to dial the correct number.
International charges will apply to this call.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Center	Toll Free Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-250-113

Memo

SoftBank 942P User Guide

March 2012, Second Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank shop.

Model: SoftBank 942P

Manufacturer: Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd.



モバイル・リサイクルネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力。

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.